

CAMBRIDGE

مرجع زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

English Vocabulary **in Use**

Pre-intermediate

Vocabulary reference
and practice

With answers

B1

English
Profile



CD-ROM



Third Edition

Stuart Redman

English Vocabulary **in** **Use**

Pre-intermediate
and intermediate

**THIRD
EDITION**

*with answers
and CD-ROM*

Stuart Redman



Contents

Thanks and acknowledgements	5	30 On the road	66
Introduction	6	31 Notices and warnings	68
Learning		Education and study	
1 Learning vocabulary	8	32 Classroom language	70
2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook	10	33 School education	72
3 Using a dictionary	12	34 Studying English and taking exams	74
4 English language words	14	35 University education	76
The world around us		Work and business	
5 Country, nationality and language	16	36 Jobs	78
6 The physical world	18	37 Talking about your work	80
7 Weather	20	38 Making a career	82
8 Animals and insects	22	39 Working in an office	84
People		40 Running a company	86
9 The body and movement	24	41 Business and finance	88
10 Describing appearance	26	Leisure and entertainment	
11 Describing character	28	42 Sport and leisure	90
12 Feelings	30	43 Competitive sport	92
13 Family and friends	32	44 Books and films	94
14 Growing up	34	45 Music	96
15 Romance, marriage and divorce	36	46 Special events	98
Daily life		Tourism	
16 Daily routines	38	47 Air travel	100
17 The place where you live	40	48 Hotels and restaurants	102
18 Around the home	42	49 Sightseeing holidays	104
19 Everyday problems	44	50 Holidays by the sea	106
20 Money	46		
21 Health	48		
22 Clothes	50		
23 Fashion and buying clothes	52		
24 Shopping	54		
25 Food	56		
26 Cooking	58		
27 City life	60		
28 Life in the country	62		
29 Transport	64		



Thanks and acknowledgements

For this third edition, I would particularly like to thank Julie Moore for her detailed and insightful comments on the manuscript while in preparation. At Cambridge University Press, I would like to thank the editorial team under Noirin Burke, and especially Tracy Griffin for her tireless work in editing a long and complex manuscript, Alyson Maskell for her editorial work and support, and Emily Hird for her overall supervision of the project and for carefully steering the book from its early stages through to production. Finally, I would like to thank Andy George and Jeanette Alfoldi in production, Lucy Fox for photo research, and Marcus Fletcher for proofreading.

I would also like to thank the teachers and students who participated in focus groups at the following institutions:

Anglia Ruskin University, Cambridge
Cambridge Academy of English, Cambridge
OISE, Cambridge
Oxford English Centre, Oxford

This product is informed by English Profile. English Profile is a collaborative program to enhance the learning, teaching and assessment of English worldwide and its main funding partners are Cambridge University Press and Cambridge ESOL. The aim of English Profile is to create a 'profile' for English linked to the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEF). English Profile outcomes will provide detailed information about the language that learners can be expected to demonstrate at each CEF level, offering a clear benchmark for learners' proficiency. For more information, please visit www.englishprofile.org.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان
www.irLanguage.com

Introduction

To the student

This book will help you learn more than 2,000 words and phrases, and you can use it without a teacher. There are 100 units in the book. You can study them in any order, but the first four units have information about vocabulary that will help you with your learning.

Here is what the pages look

The left-hand page presents the new vocabulary.

New vocabulary is in bold.

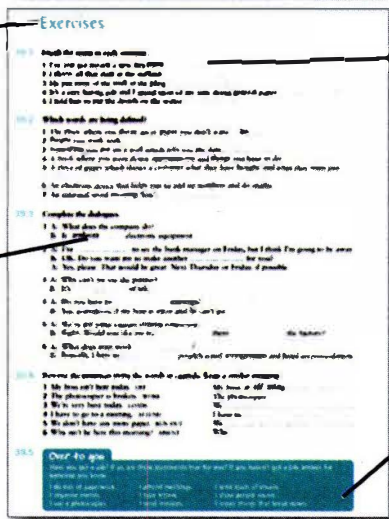
The right-hand page practises the new vocabulary.

There is an example in each exercise to help you.



Pictures and diagrams show the meaning of some words.

Example sentences help you to understand new words.



There is space for you to write your answers.

Over to you is a chance for you to use the new words to write about yourself, your life and your country.

After you do the exercises, you can check your answers in the **Answer key** at the back of the book. You will also find possible answers for most of the **Over to you** exercises.

The **Index** at the back of the book has all the new words and phrases from the units, with a phonemic transcription to help you with pronunciation. If you have the edition with the CD-ROM, you can listen to the pronunciation of all the new vocabulary, and there are more practice exercises as well. See pp 263–4 for more information about the CD-ROM.

There is another book that gives you further practice of all the vocabulary in this book. It is called *Test your English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate*.

After you finish this book, you can go on to study *English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate*, and then *English Vocabulary in Use Advanced*.

It is a good idea to have a dictionary when you use the book. Sometimes you may want a bilingual dictionary, so you can find a translation; sometimes the book asks you to use an English dictionary for an exercise. You also need a notebook when you are studying. The study units 1–4 in this book will give you ideas and information to help you to use your notebook and become a better learner. I hope you enjoy using this book.

To the teacher

This book can be used in class or for self-study. It is intended for learners at the upper A2 level and B1 level on the Council of Europe scale, and teaches more than 2,000 words and phrases. The vocabulary is organised around common everyday topics, but also contains units on different aspects of language such as phrasal verbs, uncountable nouns and link words and phrases. These units provide key information about lexis, but also help to ensure that learners are exposed to the most important vocabulary for their level. The first four units are dedicated to aspects of vocabulary learning such as record keeping and dictionary use. The book has been written so that units can be studied in any order, but I recommend you look at these four study units first, as they provide learners with important advice about vocabulary learning in general.

Throughout the book, vocabulary items have been chosen for their usefulness in a wide range of everyday situations, and this task has been made easier by having access to the English Profile (EP). Forming part of a large research programme sponsored by the Council of Europe, the EP helps teachers and students identify the words or phrases that a learner can be expected to know at each level of the Common European Framework. The words and phrases have been selected using the Cambridge Learner Corpus, examination wordlists and classroom materials, and in this book the main focus is on words and phrases at the upper end of the A2 level and across the B1 level.

Much of the new vocabulary (on average about 25 items per unit) is presented through different types of text, and then explained immediately after the item appears, or in a separate glossary below the text; some words are presented in tables or lists, and contextualised in sentence examples; some of the new vocabulary is presented in pictures and diagrams.

The new vocabulary is then practised on the right-hand pages through a wide range of exercise types. These pages generally progress from easier to more difficult exercises, with items often tested receptively first, e.g. through a matching or grouping exercise, before moving on to more challenging productive exercises such as gap-fill texts or sentence transformations. In many units, the final exercise is called **Over to you**. This indicates a personalised exercise, in which learners have an opportunity to use some of the new vocabulary to talk about themselves, their lives and their country, and sometimes to express their own personal opinions. These make ideal classroom speaking activities for pairs or groups, but many of the exercises on the right-hand page can be adapted for speaking practice. For example, where there are short question and answer dialogues, students can first read the dialogues out loud, then one student can ask the questions, and their partner has to respond appropriately using target vocabulary from the unit, but without referring to the book.

There is a comprehensive Answer key at the back of the book, as well as an Index of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where each item appears.

Alongside this book, you can also use *Test Your Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate and intermediate*. This accompanying book provides tests on all the vocabulary from *English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate*, and is an ideal way for you to revise the vocabulary with your students. After that, they will be ready to go on to *English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate* by Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell.

Find more resources for teachers at www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse

I hope you enjoy using this new edition.

A Using this book

It's a good idea to have a routine when you use this book [something you do often and usually in the same way]. For example:

- a weekly routine when you study a new unit for at least [not less than] 30–45 minutes;
- a daily routine when you revise that unit [study it again]. You may only need to revise for five or ten minutes each time.

1.1

Over to you

Write your answers.

- 1 How often can you spend at least half an hour or forty-five minutes on a unit?
.....
- 2 How often can you revise? How much time can you spend when you revise? Where will you do it?
.....

B Studying a new unit

When you are studying a unit for the first time, you need to be active when you are learning.

- With a new word or phrase, say it aloud [speak it so you can hear it], and repeat it to yourself silently [in your head, not speaking]. If you have the CD-ROM that goes with the book, use it to check the pronunciation.
- Use a highlighter pen to mark words you think are important or difficult.
- Write down new words and phrases in your notebook. (See Unit 2 for more information.)
- Always try to write an example sentence for new words. You can choose an example from this book or a dictionary, but an example from your own life will often help you to remember a word, e.g. *I shared a flat with an Australian girl when I was in London last year.*
- Do exercises in pencil, then you can rub them out (using a rubber) and do them again later. This is a good way to revise vocabulary.

1.2

Over to you

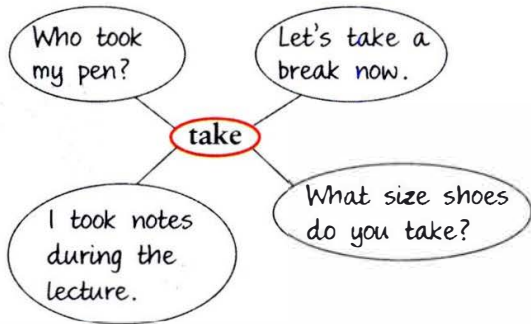
Write your answers.

- 1 Which of these things do you do now when you are learning vocabulary?
- 2 What will you do in the future?

C Revising a unit

When you are revising a unit one or two days later, it is also important to be as active as possible.

- Test yourself, e.g. look at a word and cover the meaning. Can you remember what the meaning is? If you can't, check the meaning, then come back to the word in five minutes' time and test yourself again.
- Look at what you wrote in your notebook when you first studied the unit. Is there any new information you want to add, e.g. something about the pronunciation, or a common word partner? (See Unit 2.)
- Diagrams may help you to organise some of the vocabulary differently, and help you to remember it.



Over to you

Write your answers.

- 1 Do you revise vocabulary that you study? If so, how often?
- 2 Will you try to revise more often in the future? If so, will you use some of the ideas above?

D Expanding* your vocabulary

- When you learn a word, e.g. *dirty*, think of synonyms (*syn*) [words with a similar meaning] or opposites (*opp*) in your language. Look them up in a bilingual dictionary to find the English words, then look up the English words in an English dictionary to check the meaning. From this, you will find that the opposite of *dirty* is *clean*, and you may also find *filthy* [very dirty].
*making something bigger

1.4 Using this method, find opposites for the words in bold.

- 1 My room is very **clean**. *opp* dirty
- 2 It's a **permanent** job. *opp*
- 3 He was **kind** to all of his animals. *opp*
- 4 Babies have very **soft**, smooth skin. *opp*
- 5 Where's the **entrance**? *opp*
- 6 Was the bird **dead**? *opp*
- 7 Did they **accept** the invitation? *opp*

- Building word families (see Units 69–71) will also help to expand your vocabulary. From a noun, verb or adjective, you can often find related words in the dictionary with a similar meaning. So, you can often learn two or three words, and not just one, e.g. argue *v* = have an angry discussion; *n* = argument.

1.5 Use a dictionary to find the related parts of speech for the words in bold.

- 1 She gave me some **advice**. *verb* advise
- 2 We mustn't **argue**. *noun*
- 3 I will have to **revise** this unit. *noun*
- 4 Is there a **choice**? *verb*
- 5 I want to **expand** my vocabulary. *noun*
- 6 The two boys are very **different**. *noun* *verb*
- 7 They need to **communicate** more. *noun* *adj*

- Try to read and listen to English as much as possible. The more you read and listen, the more you will learn. When you read, try to:
 - **Highlight** or underline interesting new words
 - Highlight words if they are familiar but you can't remember the meaning.
- There is a lot of spoken English on the Internet which you can play again and again. Try to make a note of interesting words and look up the meaning.

1.6

Over to you

Now choose a unit that interests you. Study the left-hand page, then do the exercises in pencil. Wait for at least 24 hours, revise the unit, then answer these questions.

- 1 How many answers did you get right the first time?
- 2 How many answers did you get right the second time?

Study unit 2

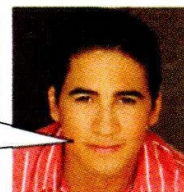
Keeping a vocabulary notebook

A What do you do?

This is what some students do.



I write down new English words and phrases in my notebook, and next to each one I write a Spanish translation. I usually write down if a word is a *noun*, *verb*, *adjective*, and so on.



RAFAEL



KAZUO

I sometimes write a word in phonemics because English pronunciation is very difficult for me. But my notebook is a mess [nothing is in a good order; *syn* untidy]. I like to draw pictures.



EUN



ANDREY

I sometimes make a note of new words in my notebook, but I often forget [don't remember]. I usually write a translation, and sometimes I write example sentences as well.

I've got a notebook. I don't use it much but when I do, I try and list words by topic, so I put all the animals together, and all the clothes words together, and so on. I find it's easier to remember the words this way.



DONATA

I note down new words and phrases. Sometimes I translate them into Polish, and sometimes I write an explanation [a description of what something means] in English if it is not difficult. For example: *kitten* a very young cat

B Tips for your notebook

A tip is a piece of advice to help you. Here are some tips for your notebook.

- Put words from one topic in the same place, e.g. food in one place, clothes in another, etc. Don't mix them up [put them together with no order]. You can also have grammar topics, e.g. 'uncountable nouns', or a page for words that all have a connection, e.g. words and phrases that were all in a story you read in English. Some words and phrases will go in more than one topic.
- If you can't find a topic for a new word or phrase, e.g. *useful* or *in particular*, put them in a different place in your notebook, e.g. a page for each day or each week, or perhaps one page for every English lesson you have. Write the date clearly at the top, e.g. Monday 14th May.
- When you write down new vocabulary, write a translation if it is necessary [you need it; *opp* unnecessary], but also write the meaning in English if it is possible, or draw pictures.
- If possible, add synonyms, opposites, other parts of speech, etc. (See Unit 1.)
awful *adj* = terrible (*syn* dreadful)
enjoy *v* = like something and get pleasure from it *n* = enjoyment *adj* = enjoyable
- Example sentences help you with the grammar of a word, or with word partners (collocations).
I enjoy living in a big city. (NOT I enjoy to live in a big city.) (See Units 87–8.)
I spent two weeks in Rome. (NOT I passed two weeks in Rome. You spend time in a place.) (See Unit 74.)
- Remember, words often have more than one meaning that you need to know, e.g. a tip is also money that you give, for example, to a waiter for serving you in a restaurant.

Exercises

2.1 Organise the words into the topics below. One word can go in two different topics. Use a dictionary to help you.

diet branch lay the table count *v* dig *v* ground flour add up
raw leaf minus butcher thousand frozen zero butterfly

food	garden	numbers
diet		



2.2 Explain these words in English, or draw a picture, or if you think an explanation is too difficult and a drawing is not possible, write a translation instead.

- 1 raw not cooked
- 2 dig
- 3 butcher
- 4 leaf
- 5 flour
- 6 lay the table
- 7 add up
- 8 minus

2.3 What information could you include with these words? The answers are all on the opposite page.

- 1 forget opposite - remember
- 2 awful
- 3 necessary
- 4 translate
- 5 tip
- 6 enjoy

2.4

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Look again at what the students said on the opposite page. What are the good things that they do? Underline them.
- 2 Do you do all of these things?
- 3 Is there anything you don't do now, but will do in the future?
- 4 At the moment, which person's notebook is most like your notebook?
- 5 What are the most useful tips on the opposite page for you?

Using a dictionary

A What dictionaries do I need?

A **bilingual** dictionary [using two languages] is easy for you to understand, and quick and easy to use. A dictionary in English will give you reading practice in English and many more examples of how words are used. If possible, use both. These are good dictionaries in English for your level, and most of them are available online:

- Cambridge Learner's Dictionary*
- Longman Active Study Dictionary*
- Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*
- Macmillan Essential Dictionary*

B Information in dictionaries

If you **look up** a word [find a word in a dictionary] using the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary*, the information is shown like this:

pronunciation using phonemic symbols (see page 247)

part of speech (= noun)

a definition explains the meaning

fixed phrases using the word are shown in bold (see Units 75-6)

fun¹ /fʌn/ *noun* [u] **1** enjoyment or pleasure, or something that gives you enjoyment or pleasure. *She's great fun to be with.* ○ *Have fun!* (= enjoy yourself) ○ *It's no fun having to work late every night.* **2** *for fun/for the fun of it* for pleasure and not for any other reason **3** *make fun of sb/sth* to make a joke about someone or something in an unkind way. *The other children at school used to make fun of his hair.*

[U] tells you that *fun* is uncountable (see Unit 86)

examples are in italics

bold italics show common word partners (see Unit 74)

3.1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Use a dictionary to check your answers.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|-------|
| 1 allways | <i>always</i> | 6 confortable | ..... |
| 2 realy | ..... | 7 accomodation | ..... |
| 3 unfortunatly | ..... | 8 beautifull | ..... |
| 4 expecially | ..... | 9 unbeleivable | ..... |
| 5 cloths | ..... | 10 necessary | ..... |

3.2 In the word *island* /'aɪlənd/, the letter 's' is silent (not pronounced). Use your dictionary to find the silent letters in these words.

- 1 knee 2 comb 3 castle 4 salmon 5 receipt



C Defining words

'Defining words' are words that dictionaries use when they define [explain] the words in the dictionary. Some of these are quite common.

- emphasise** [give something more attention and importance], e.g. My teacher has always emphasised the importance of writing down new words in a notebook.
- relating to or connected to/with** [having a relationship with someone or something], e.g. *musical* is connected with / related to *music*
- amount** [how much there is of something], e.g. £5 million is a large amount of money.
- official** [done by the government or someone in authority], e.g. A passport is an official document.
- behave** [do or say things in a particular way], e.g. People can behave strangely when they're nervous.

3.3 Complete the dictionary definitions using words from the box.

~~connected with~~ emphasise relating to behave official amount

- 1 industrial /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 1 adjective ~~connected with~~ industry
- 2 sum /sʌm/ noun [C] an of money
- 3 pretend /prɪ'tend/ verb [I,T] to as if something is true when it is not
- 4 certificate /sə'tɪfɪkət/ noun [C] an document that gives details to show something is true
- 5 not at all /nɒt ət ɔ:l/ used instead of 'no' or 'not' to what you are saying:
I'm not at all happy about it
- 6 legal /'li:ɡəl/ adjective the law

D

Using a dictionary

- When you use a dictionary to check the meaning of a word, put a tick (✓) next to it. Each time you return to a page with a tick, see [find out] if you remember the word.
- When you meet a new word or phrase in a text, first try to guess the meaning [try to think of the meaning when you don't know it]. Then, use a dictionary to see if your guess was correct.
- Don't just read the dictionary definition. Example phrases and sentences show you how a word or phrase is used, and they help you to understand the meaning more clearly.
- If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get two or three different translations, check these words in an English dictionary to see which translation is the best one for the situation.
- Remember that many words have more than one meaning. The first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. You may need to read through the different meanings.

3.4 Answer the questions, and use an English dictionary to check the answers.

- 1 What does *puppy* mean? *It's a very young dog.*
- 2 Is the correct spelling *organize* or *organise*?
- 3 What part of speech is *extremely*?
- 4 What kind of noun is *advice*?
- 5 What preposition follows the verb *rely*?
- 6 Look up *friend*, and then the words in bold that are often used with it. Can you complete these phrases? *She's an friend; he's my friend; you friends with people.*

3.5 Match the sentences on the right with the different meanings of *post* on the left.

post¹ /pəʊst/ noun 1 [SYSTEM] [no plural] UK (US mail) the system for sending letters, parcels, etc *Your letter is in the post.* ○ *I'm sending the documents by post.*
 ○ 2 [LETTERS] [u] UK (US mail) letters, parcels, etc that you send or receive *Has the post arrived/come yet?* ○
 3 [JOB] [c] formal a job a part-time post ○ a teaching post 4 [POLE] [c] a long, vertical piece of wood or metal fixed into the ground at one end *I found the dog tied to a post.*

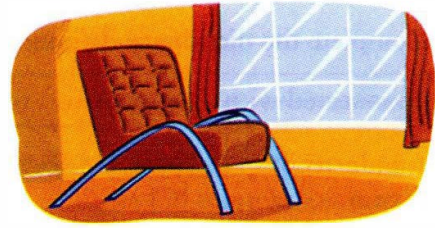
- 1 He's applied for a post overseas.
- 2 Did you send the cheque by post?
- 3 I tied the flag to a post.
- 4 We haven't had any post yet.

English language words

A Parts of speech

“I have a brown leather chair by the window, and I often sit there in the morning to read the paper.”

In the sentence above, *I* is a **pronoun**; *chair*, *window*, *morning* and *paper* are all **nouns**; *have*, *sit* and *read* are **verbs**; *brown* and *leather* are **adjectives**; *often* is an **adverb**; *by* is a **preposition**; *the* is a **definite article**; *a* is an **indefinite article**; *and* is a **conjunction** or **link word**.



Here are two more examples:

“We saw an elephant at the zoo yesterday.”

Elephant and *zoo* are **nouns**; *saw* is a **verb**; *at* is a **preposition**; *an* is an **indefinite article**; *the* is a **definite article**.

“It was a cold night, so I walked quickly.”

Was and *walked* are **verbs**; *cold* is an **adjective**; *night* is a **noun**; *quickly* is an **adverb**; *so* is a **link word**.

B Grammar

When you are learning vocabulary, you need to know certain things about different words; for example, if nouns are **countable**, e.g. *books*, *apples*, *chairs*; or **uncountable**, e.g. *information* (NOT **informations**), *advice* (NOT **advices**). (See Unit 86.)

With verbs, you need to know if they are **regular**, e.g. *work*, *live*, etc; or **irregular**, e.g. *go/went*, *take/took*. You will also need to learn the grammar of **phrasal verbs**, e.g. *take something off*, *wake up*. (See Units 79–80.)

You also need to learn certain groups of words as **phrases**, e.g. *at the moment*, *never mind*, *see you later*. (See Units 75–6.)

C Word building

In the word *uncomfortable*, *un-* is a **prefix**, and *-able* is a **suffix**. Other common prefixes include *in-* and *dis-*, e.g. *incorrect* and *dislike*. Common suffixes include *-ment* and *-ive*, e.g. *improvement* and *attractive*. (See Units 69–71.)

D Pronunciation

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonemic symbols**, e.g. *book* /bʊk/, *before* /bɪ'fɔː/, *cinema* /'sɪnəmə/.

Every word has one or more **syllables**, e.g. *book* has one syllable, *before* has two syllables, *cinema* has three syllables.

It is important to know which syllable to stress, e.g. on *before* it is the second syllable (be'fore), on *cinema* it is the first syllable ('cinema). The vertical mark ' shows where the stressed syllable begins.

E Punctuation

Every sentence must begin with a **capital letter** and end with a **full stop**. Some sentences have a **comma**, which often shows a **pause** [when you stop reading or speaking for a short time] in a long sentence. Did you also know that a question must end with a **question mark**?

Exercises

4.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

~~noun~~ comma phonemic symbol adverb stress
question mark syllable preposition full stop adjective

parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation
noun		

4.2 There is one word missing in each line of the text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? What part of speech is it?

Last year I went to¹for my holiday. I spent the first week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and then I a train to Barcelona, where I spent another ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but I didn't mind spending a lot money because it was a wonderful and it was very convenient. My brother was the person who recommended it; he goes Spain a lot and he stays anywhere else. I may go back next year if have enough time.

- 1 ..Spain (noun).....
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

4.3 Answer the questions.

- 1 What type of verb is *break*? ..an irregular verb.....
- 2 What does a sentence begin with?
- 3 What do you put at the end of every sentence?
- 4 What's missing here.
- 5 What shows you there is a pause in the middle of a long sentence?
- 6 What type of noun is *butter*?
- 7 What type of verb are *pick somebody up*, and *grow up*?
- 8 What are *full stop* and *comma* examples of?
- 9 How do dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word?
- 10 Is the 'a' in *phrase* pronounced the same as *can*, *can't* or *late*?

4.4 Mark the stress on each word. How many syllables are there?

'English 2. informal opposite syllable
decide adjective education pronunciation

4.5 Look at these words and answer the questions.

cheap dangerous kind lucky

- 1 What part of speech are these words? ..adjectives.....
- 2 Can you change the first two words into adverbs?
- 3 Is the pronunciation of *kind* like *wind* (noun) or *find* (verb)?
- 4 What prefix do you need to form the opposite of the last two words?
- 5 What suffix makes a noun from *kind*?

5 Country, nationality and language

A Who speaks what where?

country	nationality	language
Australia	Australian	English
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
China	Chinese	Mandarin (and Cantonese)
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
France	French	French
Germany	German	German
Greece	Greek	Greek
Israel	Israeli	Hebrew
Italy	Italian	Italian
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
(South) Korea	Korean	Korean
Poland	Polish	Polish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian	Arabic
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Switzerland	Swiss	Swiss-German, French, Italian
Thailand	Thai	Thai
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish
the UK (United Kingdom)*	British	English
the USA (United States of America)	American	English

*the UK (England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland)

I come from Argentina, so I'm **Argentinian** and my **first language** is Spanish. The capital is Buenos Aires, which has a **population** of more than 10 million people.

Common mistakes

He's English. (NOT He's english); We ate **French** food. (NOT We ate ~~France~~ food.)

I went to **the USA**. (NOT I went ~~to~~ USA.) I also visited **the UK**. (NOT I also ~~visited~~ UK.)

B Parts of the world

The **continents** in the world are **Europe**, **Africa**, **Asia**, **North America**, **South America**, **Australia** [Australia and New Zealand] and **Antarctica**.

We also use these terms for different parts of the world:

the **Middle East** (e.g. United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia), the **Far East** (e.g. Thailand, Japan), the **Caribbean** (e.g. Jamaica, Barbados), **Scandinavia** (Sweden, Norway, Denmark, Finland).

C The people

When we are talking about people from a particular country, we add 's' to nationalities ending in '-i' or '-(i)an', but we need the definite article (the) for most others.

Brazilians/Russians	} are ...	The British / The French	} are ...
Thais/Israelis		The Swiss / The Japanese	

With both groups we can also use the word 'people', e.g. Brazilian people, British people, etc.

Exercises

5.1 Answer the questions.

- 1 What nationality are people from Poland? Polish
- 2 What nationality are people from Thailand?
- 3 What language is spoken in Spain?
- 4 Where do people speak Hebrew?
- 5 Where do people speak Mandarin?
- 6 What language is spoken in Brazil?
- 7 What language is spoken in Egypt?
- 8 What nationality are people from Germany?
- 9 Write down three countries whose first language is English.
- 10 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland.

5.2 What parts of the world are these countries in? Write the continent, e.g. Europe, or the area, e.g. the Far East.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Germany <u>Europe</u> | 4 Italy |
| 2 Japan | 5 Jamaica |
| 3 Saudi Arabia | 6 Argentina |

5.3 Underline the main stress in the words in the box, and practise saying them. Use the pronunciation in the index to help you.

Brazilian	Japan	Egyptian	Arabic	Scandinavia
Chinese	Portuguese	Australia	Saudi Arabia	

5.4 Write the answers.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Bangkok is the capital of <u>Thailand</u> | 4 Moscow is the capital of |
| 2 Ankara is the capital of | 5 Buenos Aires is the capital of |
| 3 Seoul is the capital of | 6 Athens is the capital of |

5.5 Complete the sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 1 I've worked a lot with <u>the French</u> | FRANCE |
| 2 I know lots of | GERMANY |
| 3 We do a lot of business with | JAPAN |
| 4 I used to know a lot of | ISRAEL |
| 5 I have always found very friendly. | BRAZIL |
| 6 People often say that are very reserved. | BRITAIN |
| 7 are very organised. | SWITZERLAND |
| 8 I met a lot of on my trip to Moscow. | RUSSIA |

5.6

Over to you

www.irLanguage.com

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions for you, then ask a friend – if possible, someone from a different country – and write their answers.

- 1 What's your nationality?
- 2 What's the capital city and population of your country?
- 3 What's your first language?
- 4 What other languages do you speak?
- 5 Which countries have you visited?
- 6 Which countries would you like to visit?

6

The physical world

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

A

Facts

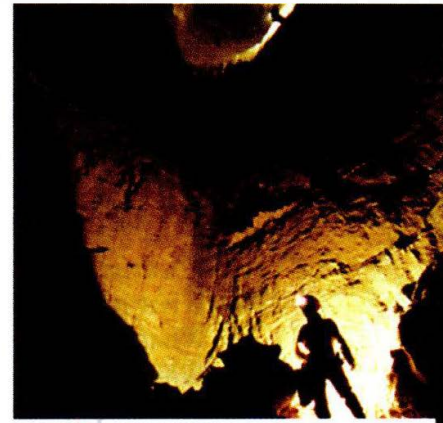
Did you know ...

- Two thirds of the **surface**¹ of the **Earth**² is **covered in** water.
- El Azizia in Libya is the hottest place **in the world**, where **temperatures of over**³ 57 °C (57 **degrees** Celsius) have been recorded.
- The coldest place **on earth** is probably Vostok in Antarctica, which reached a temperature of **minus** 89 °C.
- The Krubera-Voronja **Cave** near the Black Sea coast in Georgia, is the deepest cave in the world. It is **over** 2000 metres deep.
- The Beijing–Hangzhou Grand **Canal** is the longest canal in the world. It is 1,794 kilometres long.
- The highest **waterfall** in the world is the Salto Angel Falls in Venezuela. It is 993 metres high.
- The Amazon Rainforest is the largest **rainforest** in the world, **covering** 40% of the South American continent.
- The Pacific is the largest **ocean** in the world, and is nearly twice the size of the Atlantic Ocean.

¹ the top or outside part
² the planet we live on

³ more than

The Krubera-Voronja Cave



Beijing-Hangzhou Grand Canal



The Salto Angel Waterfall

Language help

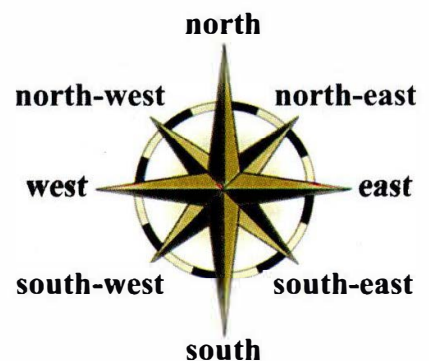
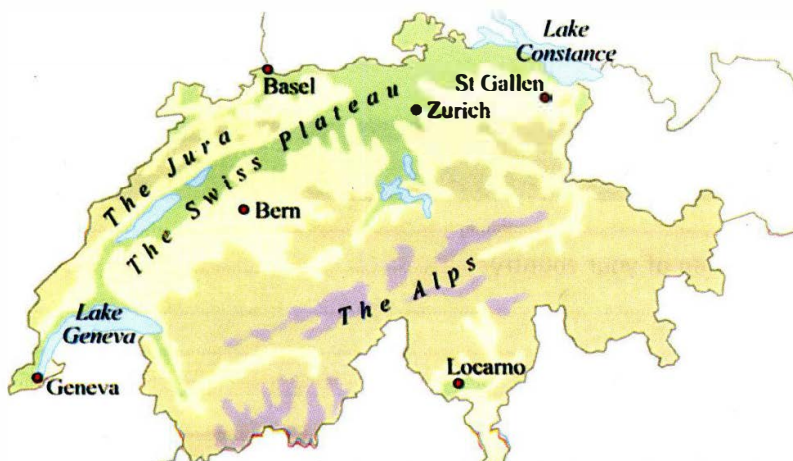
www.irLanguage.com

Cover can mean that something is over something else, e.g. *The surface was **covered in** water; The ground was **covered with** snow.* Cover can also refer to the size of something, e.g. *The Amazon rainforest **covers** 40% of South America,* or the distance you travel, e.g. *We **covered** ten miles in one day.*

B

Geography

Switzerland **consists of** [is made or formed from] three main geographical regions [areas in a country or the world]: The Swiss Plateau, The Jura, and The Alps. Switzerland is a land of **contrasts** [big differences], with completely different **landscapes** [the appearance of an area of land]. The **climate** [weather conditions] can also change within a very short distance. For example, Ascona **in the south** has an almost Mediterranean climate, but the Dufour Peak in Valais has a very cold climate. The distance between the two is just 70 kilometres.



Exercises

6.1 Look at the map of Switzerland and complete the sentences.

- 1 Zurich is *in the north*
- 2 The Jura mountains are
- 3 Geneva is
- 4 St Gallen is
- 5 Basel is
- 6 Lake Constance is
- 7 Locarno is

6.2 Test your knowledge. Can you complete these sentences without looking at the opposite page?

- 1 Two thirds of the *surface* of the Earth is covered in water.
- 2 Vostok in Antarctica is the
- 3 El Azizia in Libya is the
- 4 The Krubera-Voronja is the deepest in the world.
- 5 The Beijing–Hangzhou Grand is the longest in the world.
- 6 At 993 metres the Salto Angel Falls is the highest in the world.
- 7 The Amazon is the largest
- 8 The largest in the world is the Pacific.
- 9 The we live on is called Earth.

6.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the *world*
- 2 In the autumn, the ground is in leaves that have fallen off the trees.
- 3 You find this animal in the semi-desert of Australia.
- 4 Brazil is a country of : large empty areas inland, and cities near the coast.
- 5 The Amazon rainforest 40% of the South American continent.
- 6 Mountains and lakes are typical of the in Switzerland.
- 7 It was a freezing night. The was well below zero.
- 8 Switzerland of three main geographical regions.
- 9 It takes the moon just under 28 days to go round the
- 10 People say Cape Town in South Africa has a wonderful : sunny for much of the year, and never too hot or very cold.
- 11 The from London to Paris is 340 kilometres; that's less than the from London to Edinburgh.
- 12 When the temperature fell to 10 celsius, all the schools in the town closed.

6.4

Over to you

Answer the questions about your country and your region.

- 1 What are the highest and lowest temperatures?
- 2 Do you like the climate?
- 3 Are there any regions which have a very different landscape from the rest of the country?
- 4 Do you have any long canals, or famous caves or waterfalls?
- 5 How would you describe the landscape in the region where you live?
- 6 What's the distance from the place where you live to the next big town?

A

Weather conditions

Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding -y.

noun	adjective	noun	adjective	verb
fog	foggy	sun	sunny	the sun is shining
cloud	cloudy	wind	windy	the wind is blowing
the cold	cold	snow		it's snowing
ice	icy	rain	wet	it's raining

There are common word partners to describe weather conditions:

It was very cloudy this morning, but the sun came out after lunch. [appeared]

The accident happened in thick fog. [bad fog]

We had some heavy rain at the weekend. [a lot of rain; *opp* light rain]

There was a strong wind when we were on the boat. [a lot of wind]

The wind has blown all the apples off the tree.

It rained in the morning, but the sky was clear by lunchtime. [no clouds]

It's been extremely cold today. [very; also extremely hot/windy]

B

Rain and storms

For heavy rain we often use the verb **pour**, e.g. **pour with rain**. For short periods of light or heavy rain, we use the noun **shower**. A **storm** is heavy rain with strong winds.

It poured with rain this afternoon.

Look, it's really pouring (with rain) now.

We had a couple of heavy/light showers this morning.

A period of hot weather sometimes ends with a **thunderstorm**.

First it becomes very **humid** [the air feels very warm and wet], then you hear **thunder** and see **lightning**, and it's followed by heavy rain.



C

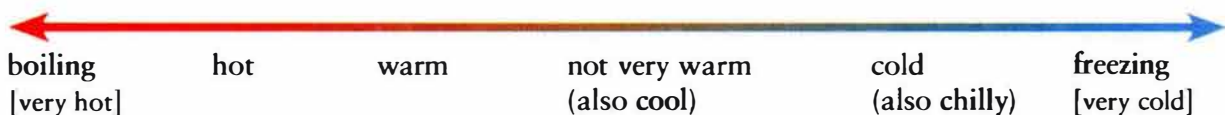
Temperature*



40 degrees Celsius



10 degrees below zero



* how hot or cold it is

Language help

Cool can either mean slightly cold in a negative way, e.g. *We've had a cool summer*; or slightly cold in a pleasant way, e.g. *The water in the pool was lovely and cool*.

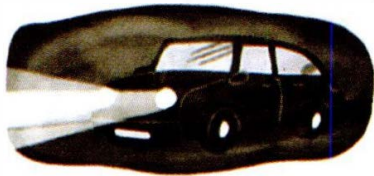
Mild is often used in a positive way to describe weather that is not as cold as usual, e.g. *It's been a mild winter*.

Exercises

7.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | |
|------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 a sunny | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a with rain |
| 2 heavy | <input type="checkbox"/> | b fog |
| 3 a strong | <input type="checkbox"/> | c sky |
| 4 a clear | <input type="checkbox"/> | d and lightning |
| 5 pour | <input type="checkbox"/> | e day |
| 6 thick | <input type="checkbox"/> | f rain |
| 7 thunder | <input type="checkbox"/> | g wind |

7.2 Write short sentences to describe the weather conditions in each picture.



1 It's foggy.....



3



5



2



4



6

7.3 True or false? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- When it's foggy, you need sunglasses. *False. When it's foggy you can't see very well.*
- It's nice to sit outside when it's freezing.
- If you're boiling, you might enjoy a swim.
- A shower is a type of wind.
- If it's chilly, you may want to put on a coat.
- If it's humid, the air will be very dry.
- A mild winter means it is colder than usual.
- If it rains, the road will be wet.

7.4 Complete the sentences.

- We had really thick *fog*..... this morning.
- I don't mind wet weather if it stays quite mild. I just hate the
- We had a heavy this morning, but it only lasted a few minutes.
- It was with rain when we left the house.
- It was minus ten in New York yesterday. It is often below here in winter. It's cold!
- It's getting very humid. We might have a later.
- It was cloudy and grey this morning, but when the sun out it was quite hot.
- What's the today? It feels much colder than yesterday.
- It was hot sitting in the sun, but under the beach umbrella it was nice and

7.5

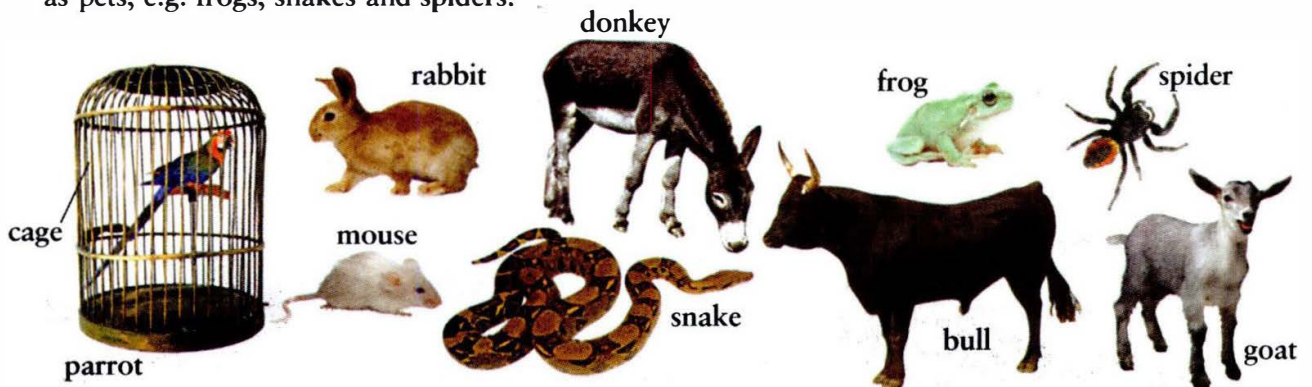
Over to you

Do you have these weather conditions in your country? When do you have them?

humid weather	storms and thunderstorms	strong winds
thick fog	temperatures below zero	showers

A Pets and farm animals

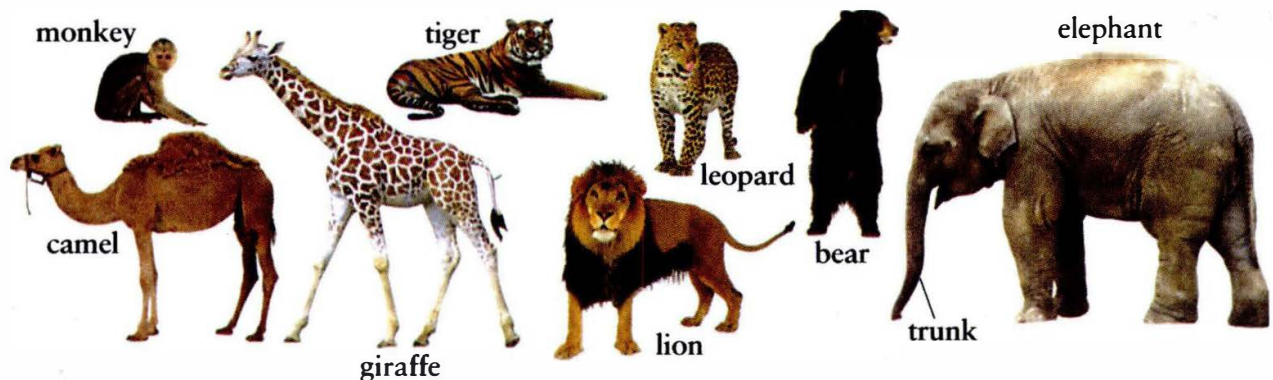
In the UK, many people keep pets [animals that live with people]. The most common are dogs and cats, but people also keep birds, e.g. parrots, that are usually in a cage. Children sometimes keep mice (*sing* mouse) and rabbits. Some people keep more unusual animals as pets, e.g. frogs, snakes and spiders.



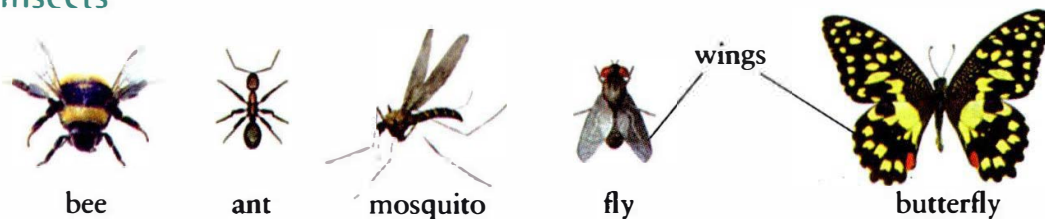
Farms in the UK may have sheep, pigs, cows, horses, donkeys, chickens, goats and a bull.

B Wild animals

The pictures show a number of wild animals [animals that normally live in natural conditions]. If you are lucky, you may see these animals in the wild [living free], but you will probably see them in a zoo. Some of these animals, for example tigers, are now quite rare [not often seen or found]. It is important that we protect [keep safe] these endangered animals.



C Insects



D Sea creatures

Many different creatures [living things, e.g. animals] live in the sea.



Exercises

8.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

horse	monkey	goat	fly	bull	bee	elephant	pig
mosquito	tiger	donkey	camel	ant	leopard	butterfly	

farm animals	wild animals	insects
horse		

8.2 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the index to help you.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------|
| 1 wh <u>a</u> le | wa <u>t</u> er | <u>d</u> ifferent | 6 go <u>a</u> t | gi <u>r</u> affe | ..... |
| 2 ca <u>t</u> | ca <u>m</u> el | <u>s</u> ame | 7 sp <u>i</u> der | w <u>i</u> ld | ..... |
| 3 be <u>a</u> r | bee | ..... | 8 ca <u>m</u> el | sn <u>a</u> ke | ..... |
| 4 le <u>o</u> pard | mosqu <u>i</u> to | ..... | 9 le <u>o</u> pard | sh <u>a</u> rk | ..... |
| 5 l <u>i</u> on | ti <u>g</u> er | ..... | 10 m <u>o</u> nkey | f <u>r</u> og | ..... |

8.3 Complete the sentences.

- Cats and dogs are the most common pets in the UK.
- I've only seen animals in zoos or on TV.
- I don't like keeping birds in a ; they need more space.
- I hate ants and mosquitos. In fact, I hate all
- It's hard to see tigers in the wild because they are now
- Some animals are disappearing, so we must them.

8.4 Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.

- Sharks can swim very long distances.
- are very clever and are similar to humans.
- can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
- can be 25 metres in length.
- can eat leaves from tall trees when they are standing on the ground.
- sometimes change their skin several times a year.
- can pick things up with their trunk.
- are kept as pets, usually in cages, and some can even talk!

8.5

Over to you

www.irLanguage.com

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

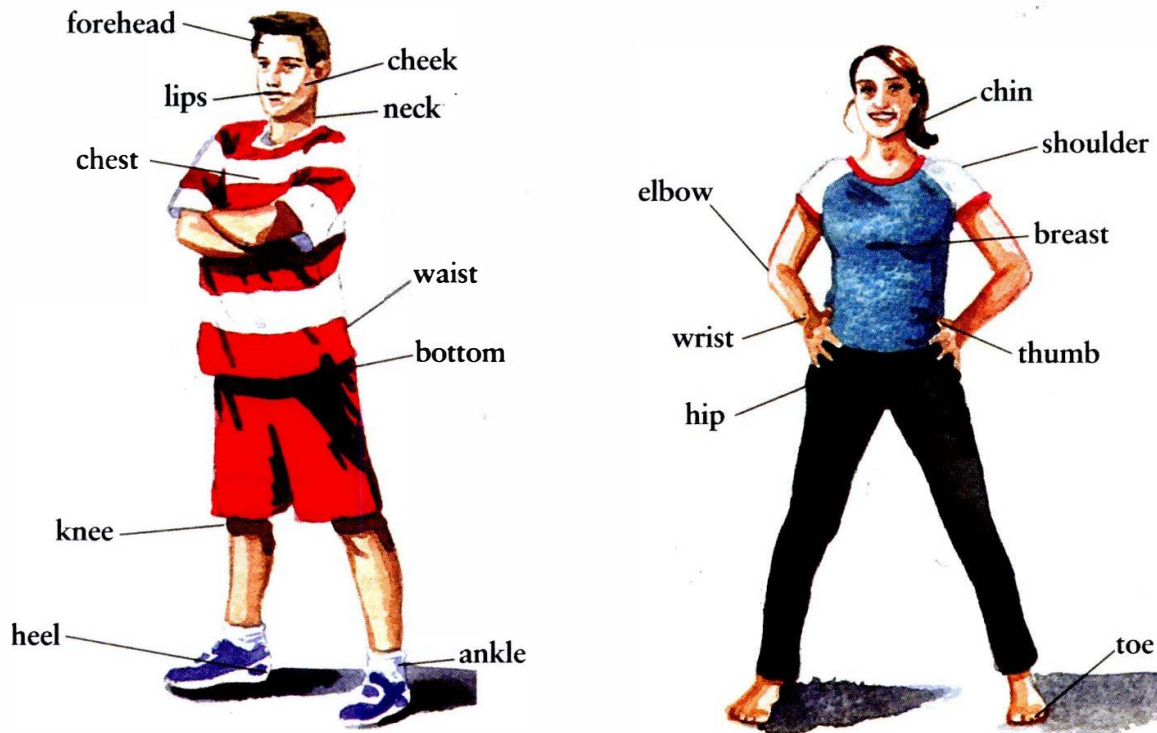
- Have you got any pets? What pets?
- Have you ever seen animals in the wild? What did you see? Where?
- How do you feel about birds in cages and wild animals in zoos?
- Are you frightened of any creatures, e.g. mice?

9

The body and movement

A Parts of the body

The outer part of the body is covered in skin. Too much sun is bad for your skin.



B Movements with your mouth, face and head

People breathe through their nose or mouth. You breathe **in** and **out** about 12–15 times a minute.

People **smile** when they're happy, and sometimes **smile at** people to be polite.

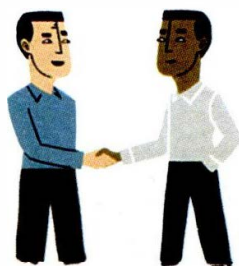
People **laugh at** things which are funny.

People sometimes **cry** if they're very unhappy, or receive bad news.

People in some countries **nod their head** [move it up and down] to mean 'yes', and **shake their head** [move it from side to side] for 'no'.

People often **yawn** when they're tired, and sometimes when they're bored.

C Common expressions



shake hands with someone



fold your arms



comb your hair



wave to somebody



blow your nose

Exercises

9.1 Find ten more words for parts of the body, either across or down.

T	H	U	K	C	A	P
O	N	H	N	H	N	I
E	C	H	E	E	K	O
H	I	P	E	S	L	C
E	A	N	K	T	E	H
E	L	B	O	W	E	I
L	I	P	S	K	I	N

toe.....

9.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 shake | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a your hair |
| 2 wave | <input type="checkbox"/> | b your nose |
| 3 comb | <input type="checkbox"/> | c to somebody |
| 4 fold | <input type="checkbox"/> | d your head |
| 5 blow | <input type="checkbox"/> | e hands |
| 6 nod | <input type="checkbox"/> | f your arms |

9.3 Label the picture.



9.4 What do these actions often mean? (There may be several possible answers.)

- 1 People often smile when they're happy.....
- 2 They often breathe quickly after
- 3 They laugh
- 4 They may wave to somebody
- 5 They blow their nose
- 6 They shake their head
- 7 And nod their head
- 8 They cry
- 9 They yawn

Describing appearance

A Describing beauty

Your **appearance** is the way you look, and we sometimes use different words to talk about beauty in men and women.

WOMEN can be **attractive** or **good-looking** [nice to look at], and we often use **pretty** [attractive] to describe a girl. We use **beautiful** or **gorgeous** for women who are very attractive.

MEN can be attractive and good-looking, but also **handsome**. If men are very attractive, we can say they are **gorgeous** or very good-looking, but not usually beautiful.

Tom has become quite **handsome**.

Bella looks **gorgeous** in that dress.

Sammy was very **pretty** when she was younger.

They're a very **good-looking** couple.

Language help

The opposite of beautiful is **ugly**, but it is not very polite to describe someone as ugly; **ordinary** [not special or different] is more polite. It also isn't polite to say that someone is fat; **overweight** is more polite.

B Size

We can talk about a person's **height** [how tall or short they are] and their **weight** [how heavy they are], e.g. *I'm roughly* [about; *syn* approximately] *one metre eighty (tall)*, and *I weigh just under eighty kilograms*. If someone is not tall or short, you can describe them as **medium height**. If a person is very similar to most other people in height and weight, you can say they are **average**.

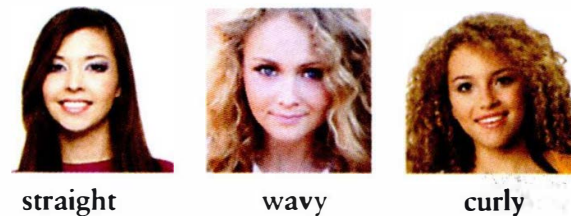
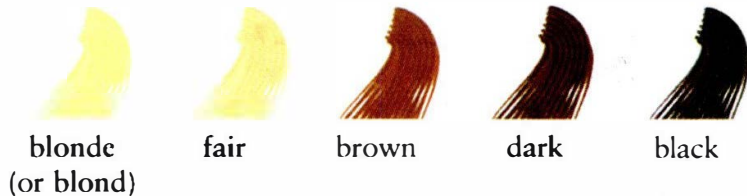
A: How tall is Kiki?

A: Is Marco quite big?

B: **Medium height**, I'd say.

B: No, about **average**.

C Hair



Common mistakes

Remember that 'hair' is uncountable, e.g. She's got straight **hair**. (NOT She's got straight **hairs**.)

Also: She's got long black **hair**. (NOT She's got a long black hair.)

D Talking about someone's appearance

A: What does Carla's boyfriend look like? [Can you describe his appearance?]

B: He's blond, and quite good-looking.

A: Is he tall?

B: Er, **tallish** [quite tall], but he's got **broad shoulders** [wide; *opp* narrow]. He looks very **athletic** [strong, healthy and often good at sports]. I think he does a lot of sport.

A: Is he quite smart? [clean, tidy and stylish]

B: Yeah, he dresses quite well. [the clothes he wears are quite nice]

Language help

We can use the suffix **-ish** at the end of some adjectives to mean 'quite', e.g. *She's got longish hair*, and at the end of some numbers to mean 'more or less', e.g. *He's twentyish*.

Exercises

10.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 She's got straight hair
- 2 Kanya is very good-.....
- 3 Beata's got blonde
- 4 Her brother's got very broad
- 5 That's a nice suit: Jack's very today.
- 6 I would say he was medium
- 7 Alexandra's hair is fair but her brother's is quite

10.2 Find six more pairs of words in the box. Why are they pairs?

<u>attractive</u>	height	average	<u>good-looking</u>	weight	narrow	roughly
tall	curly	approximately	medium	wavy	broad	weigh

Attractive and good-looking are similar in meaning.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

10.3 Complete the dialogues using words that are similar to the underlined words.

- 1 A: She's good-looking.
B: Yes, very attractive
- 2 A: Marie-José looked beautiful last night.
B: Yes, absolutely
- 3 A: Her boyfriend's quite good-looking.
B: Yes, he is rather
- 4 A: Angelo looks very strong and healthy.
B: Yes, I think he's very
- 5 A: That little girl is attractive, isn't she?
B: Yes, she's very
- 6 A: Danny's getting fat.
B: Yes, he is a bit
- 7 A: Did you think he was a bit ugly?
B: Yes, he was quite
- 8 A: Is she about 25?
B: Yes,
- 9 A: He's just above average height.
B: Yes, he is, isn't he?

10.4

Over to you
Answer the questions.

- 1 How tall are you?
- 2 What's your hair like?
- 3 Think about one of your best friends. What does he/she look like?

A What are you like?

Describe your character¹

Put a circle round the number that describes you. For example, in the first line 1 = very positive, 3 = not very positive or negative, 5 = very negative.

I think I'm very positive ² .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite a negative person.
I'm usually reliable ³ .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite unreliable .
I'm quite confident ⁴ .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite shy ⁵ .
I'm hard-working ⁶ .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite lazy .
I have a good sense of humour ⁷ .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm usually quite serious ⁸ .
I'm usually quite patient ⁹ .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite impatient .

¹ what you are like as a person

² believe that good things will happen

³ can be trusted to do what people expect you to do

⁴ feeling sure about yourself and your abilities

⁵ not confident, especially about meeting or talking to new people

⁶ putting a lot of effort into your work and spending a lot of time on it

⁷ the ability to laugh and understand when something is funny

⁸ a serious person is quiet and doesn't laugh very much

⁹ able to stay calm and not get angry, especially when things take a lot of time

Common mistakes

A: What's he like? (NOT How is he like?)

B: He's very nice. (NOT He's like very nice.)

B Opposites

positive	negative
generous [happy to give more money or help than is usual]	mean
honest [an honest person tells the truth]	dishonest
clever, intelligent [able to learn and understand things quickly]	stupid
calm [relaxed and not worried or frightened]	nervous, anxious

Language help

We use **kind** to describe someone who wants to help people a lot, and **nice, friendly or pleasant** for someone who is happy to talk to people. The opposites are **unkind, unfriendly and unpleasant**.

C Describing a friend

“The first thing I would say about my best friend is that she's very **sensible**¹. I've never known Irma to do anything **silly**², and I know I can always **trust**³ her. She's also very **creative**⁴; she makes things, and she's a very **talented**⁵ artist. I **wish**⁶ I had her talent.”

¹ practical; doesn't do stupid things

² not sensible, a bit stupid

³ be sure that she is honest

⁴ good at thinking of new ideas and using her imagination

⁵ has a natural ability

⁶ I would like to have her talent but I haven't got it.

Exercises

11.1 Find five pairs of opposites and put them into the correct columns.

nice	mean	sensible	lazy	calm	generous
unpleasant	hard-working	silly	nervous		

positive	negative
nice	

11.2 Write the opposites using the correct prefix.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 unkind | 3 .....pleasant | 5 .....honest |
| 2 .....friendly | 4 .....patient | 6 .....reliable |

11.3 Describe the person in the sentences, in one word.

- My brother is in the office from 8 am to 6 pm every day. *hard-working*
- He has never bought me a drink in ten years.
- She often promises to do things but sometimes she forgets.
- My teacher explains things again and never gets angry.
- Agnetta finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers.
- Brett is practical and doesn't do anything stupid.
- Our teacher is nice, but he's quiet and he doesn't laugh a lot.
- Anya is very relaxed and doesn't seem to worry about things.
- My boss is really good at using his imagination to think of new ideas.
- Jessica can play several musical instruments.

11.4 Complete the sentences.

- My sister can't wait for anything; she's so *impatient*.
- I get very before exams; I need to try and relax a bit more.
- I I could paint as well as your brother; he's so creative.
- Beata hasn't done a thing since she's been here. Honestly, she's so
- I always have a laugh with my cousin – he's got a great sense of
- My younger sister is able to understand new ideas so quickly; she's very
- If Sarah says she'll do it, then she'll do it. I her completely.
- He'd like to be relaxed and confident, but it's just not part of his
- He failed his exams, but he isn't He just didn't do any work.
- Paola helped me bake some cakes last week; she's very

11.5

Over to you

Complete the quiz on the opposite page for yourself. From all the words on the opposite page, which one would you most like to be, and which is the one you would hate to be? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

12 Feelings

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

A

How do you feel?

Language help

We use **emotion** and **feeling(s)** for something which someone feels strongly about, e.g. love, hate or anger. **Emotions** are part of our character, e.g. *Timo is a very emotional person.* [shows his feelings easily] **Feeling** is often plural, e.g. *She doesn't like talking about her feelings.*

Well, obviously I'm very **proud**¹ of my son's success, but I'm a bit **disappointed**² that the local paper hasn't shown more interest in the story.

- ¹ feeling good because you (or someone you know) has done something well
- ² unhappy because someone or something was not as good as you hoped, or because something did not happen

We were **curious**⁵ to see what all the noise was about, but I felt **anxious**⁶ when I saw how angry the men were, and really **scared**⁷ when they started coming towards us.

- ⁵ wanting to know or learn about something
- ⁶ worried
- ⁷ afraid; *syn* frightened

The politicians seem **confused**³ about what to do, so I'm not **hopeful**⁴ that things will improve.

- ³ not able to think clearly or understand something
- ⁴ feeling positive about a future situation

I think Tom ended the relationship because his girlfriend was getting **jealous**⁸, but now he's quite **upset**⁹.

- ⁸ unhappy and angry because someone you love seems too interested in another person
- ⁹ unhappy because something unpleasant has happened

Language help

www.irLanguage.com

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
proud	pride	disappointed	disappointment
jealous	jealousy	confused	confusion
curious	curiosity	anxious	anxiety

B The effect of the weather on our feelings

Why do people say they feel more **cheerful** [happy] when the sun shines, and **miserable** [unhappy] when it's raining? Why do some people suffer from SAD (seasonal affective disorder), which makes them feel **depressed** [unhappy, often for a long time, and without hope for the future] during long dark winters? Can the weather really affect our **mood** [the way we feel at a particular time], or is it just in our imaginations?

C The effect of colour on our emotions

Colour can have an **effect** on our mood, but how do specific colours relate to our emotions?

RED can make us feel **energetic**¹, but it can also indicate **anger**². **PINK** though, is softer and more about maternal love and **caring for**³ people. **GREEN** is associated with nature and is good for people suffering from **stress**⁴. **BLUE** is relaxing and helps us to be **creative**⁵, but too much dark blue can make us depressed.

- ¹ wanting to be busy and doing a lot of things
- ² being angry
- ³ looking after someone, especially someone young or old
- ⁴ feelings of worry caused by difficult situations such as problems at work
- ⁵ good at thinking of new ideas or using our imagination

Exercises

12.1 Cover the opposite page. Complete the tables.

adjective	noun
angry	anger
jealous	
confused	
	pride

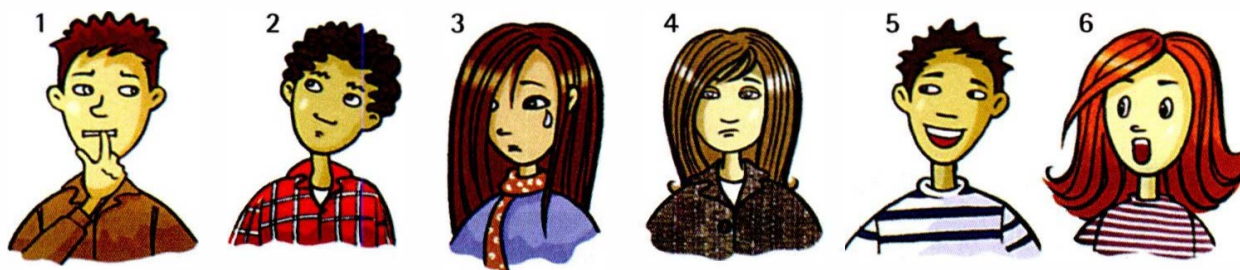
adjective	noun
disappointed	
	curiosity
anxious	
	emotion

12.2 Find the best sentence ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 He was very anxious when | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a he heard his aunt had died. |
| 2 He was very jealous when | <input type="checkbox"/> | b his father appeared on TV with the Prime Minister. |
| 3 He was very scared when | <input type="checkbox"/> | c his 14-year-old daughter didn't get home until 2 am. |
| 4 He was very proud when | <input type="checkbox"/> | d he saw the man coming towards him with a knife. |
| 5 He was very upset when | <input type="checkbox"/> | e he was ill. |
| 6 He was very miserable when | <input type="checkbox"/> | f his best friend went out with the girl he really liked. |

12.3 Match the words and faces.

anxious ...1... scared cheerful upset confused depressed



12.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 My aunt had to *care*..... for her elderly mother for years.
- 2 I can't tell whether Benita is happy or not; she never shows her
- 3 I'm much more in the mornings. By the afternoon I feel tired.
- 4 Weather has a big on the way I feel.
- 5 He's been under a lot of recently because of the amount of work he has to do.
- 6 Brendan's cheerful one minute and miserable the next; his changes all the time.
- 7 It's been a depressing month, but I'm things will get better next month.
- 8 I don't like walking home in the dark. I get very

12.5

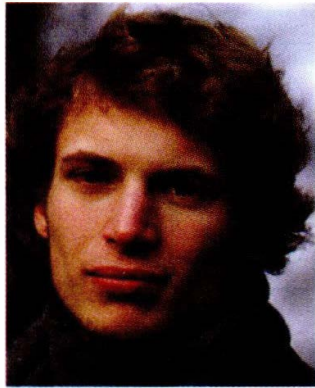
Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Does colour or the weather have an effect on your emotions? How?
- 2 Do you ever suffer from stress? Why?
- 3 Does your mood change a lot from day to day? Why?
- 4 Do you feel more energetic at certain times of the day? Why?

13 Family and friends

A Relatives*



“My father died when I was nine, and so my mother was a widow¹ with four young children. She remarried five years later, so now I have a stepfather. As he is not my real father, I call him by his first name, which is Dieter. I’ve got an elder² brother called Thomas and two younger sisters, Anya and Claudia, who are twins³. We’re a close family⁴.”

My mother is an only child⁵, but I’ve got two uncles on my father’s side. One is married with two children, and the other is married with three children, so altogether I have five cousins. I get on well with⁶ Uncle Rolf, and he always tells me I’m his favourite nephew. Of his nieces, I think he likes Anya best.

Recently my brother Thomas got married. His wife’s name is Sabine, so I now have a sister-in-law⁷ as well.”

* members of your family; *syn* relations

¹ a woman whose husband has died

² older

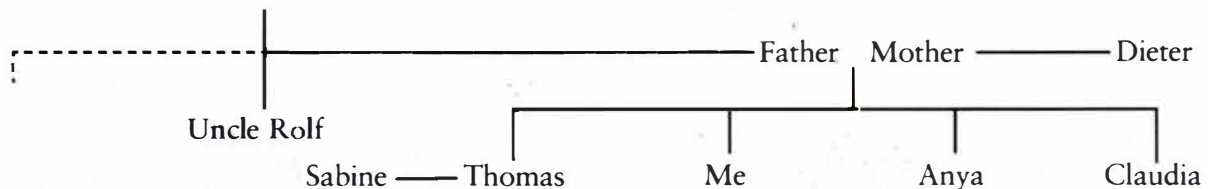
³ two children born to one mother at the same time

⁴ a family who like each other and stay together a lot

⁵ without brothers or sisters

⁶ have a good relationship with

⁷ (also mother/brother/son-in-law, etc.)



Common mistakes

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

It's more common and more natural to say 'Thomas's wife' (NOT the wife of Thomas) or 'Anna's younger sister' (NOT the younger sister of Anna).

B Friends

“My best friend is Florian, an old school friend¹. We got to know each other² when we were in the same class at school. We’ve been mates³ ever since⁴, and our friendship is very important to both of us. He spends a lot of time with my family, and his current⁵ girlfriend is actually one of Thomas’s ex-girlfriends. But we all get on really well.”

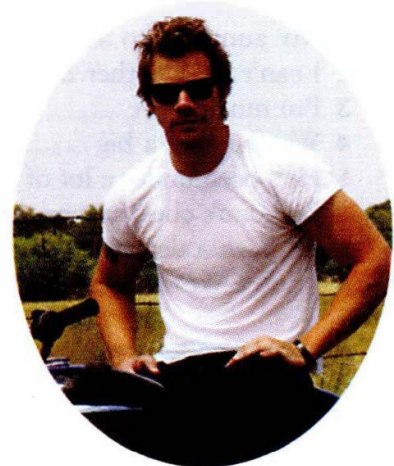
¹ someone you have known for a long time

² met and became friends

³ friends; *informal*

⁴ from that time until now

⁵ the one he has now



Florian

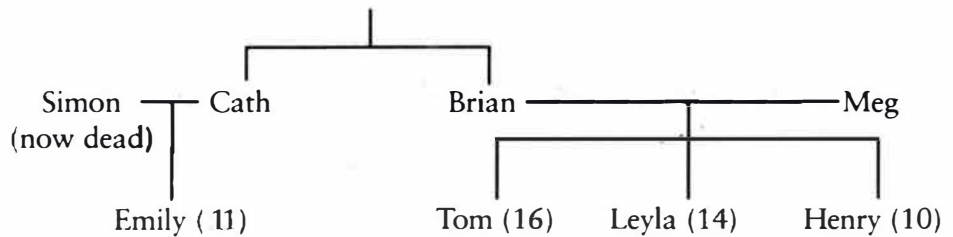
Language help

www.irLanguage.com

We use the prefix *ex-* for a relationship we had in the past but do not have now, e.g. *The children stay with my ex-husband at the weekend; I saw an ex-girlfriend of mine yesterday.*

Exercises

13.1 Look at the family tree, then complete the sentences below.



- 1 Simon died two years ago, so Cath is a widow.
- 2 Leyla is Cath's
- 3 Tom is Cath's
- 4 Cath is Meg's
- 5 Simon was Brian's
- 6 Tom is Leyla's brother.
- 7 Emily is Leyla's
- 8 Emily is an child.

13.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 Your current boyfriend is the one that you have now.
- 2 means get married again.
- 3 are all the members of your family.
- 4 Your friend is the one you like more than any other.
- 5 An friend is someone you have known for a long time.
- 6 are two children born to one mother at the same time.
- 7 is an informal word for a friend.
- 8 is the noun when two people are friends.
- 9 Your is the man who is married to your mother but is not your father.

13.3 Complete the text.

“I was still going out with James when I met my husband, Ben. We ¹ got to know each other because we went to the same gym twice a week. We went out with each other for about 18 months, and we got ² three years ago, so ³ we've been a couple for almost five years. We've continued to go to the gym ever ⁴ we got married, and I still quite often see James when we're there. It's nice if you can still ⁵ with an ⁶-boyfriend or -girlfriend.”

13.4

Over to you

Answer the questions for you, then, if possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

- 1 Are you an only child? If not, do you have elder brothers or sisters?
- 2 Do you get on well with other members of your family?
- 3 Are you a close family?
- 4 Who was the last person in your family to get married? When?
- 5 Who's your best friend?
- 6 How long have you known him/her?
- 7 How did you get to know each other?

14

Growing up

A Ages and stages in the UK



Age	Stage
0	birth [the moment a baby is born]
Up to 12 months	a baby
12 months – 3 years old	a toddler
3–12 years old	a child: this period is your childhood
13–18 approximately	a teenager: during this period you are in your teens
18+	an adult
40+ approximately	people are middle-aged [in the middle of their lives]
60 or 65	retirement [when people stop work; they are retired]
80+	old age (we usually describe people as elderly)

B Approximate ages

I'm in my **early twenties**. [21–23]
 My parents are in their **mid-fifties**. [54–56]
 My grandmother is in her **late seventies**. [77–79]
 My grandfather is **nearly/almost eighty**. [he's probably 79]
 My English teacher's **approximately/roughly thirty**.
 [about 30 / more or less 30]

Common mistakes

We can say, **he's 30** or **he's 30 years old**. (NOT he has 30 or he's 30 years)
 Also: a **30-year-old man** (NOT a 30-years-old man)

C



Past and present

“My grandmother's name was Mary. She's **dead**¹ now. She died about ten years ago when I was in my teens, but I remember her well. She was **brought up**² on a farm in Wales, and her parents were very strict: as a teenager, they didn't **allow**³ her to listen to the radio or go to parties in the village. **In the end**⁴, she decided to leave home and get a job in Cardiff. **At first**⁵ it wasn't easy, but she **managed**⁶ to find work, and she also met the man who became her husband: my grandfather. My mother was born four years later. She had a very different childhood. She grew up in the city, she **was allowed** to go to parties, and when she was in her teens, her parents **let**⁷ her **stay out late**⁸. My mum is the same with me.”

¹ not living; *opp* alive

² looked after until you are an adult

³ give permission

⁴ finally, after a lot of time or thought

⁵ at the beginning

⁶ was able (but it was difficult)

⁷ allowed

⁸ not go home until late

Language help

Let and **allow** have the same meaning. **Let** is slightly more informal, and **allow** is often used in the passive.

*My dad **let** me drive his car. I **was allowed** to drive my dad's car.*

***You're not allowed** to smoke in that room. (NOT ~~it's not allowed~~ to smoke in that room.)*

Exercises

14.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Isabella is only six months old – she's still a baby
- 2 Chan-Hee was 22 a few months ago, so he's in his
- 3 Susan is 35, so she's in her
- 4 Leyla will be 13 this year, so she'll soon be a
- 5 Ron is 53 and his wife is 47, so they're both
- 6 Joan is 80 this year, so she is quite
- 7 Michael was a bus driver for 40 years but he's now
- 8 Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes
- 9 The boys are 14 and 16, so they're both in their
- 10 Holly is just over a year old and she's starting to walk, so she's a now.

14.2 Are the sentences true or false about Mary's life on the opposite page? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 Mary was brought up in the city. False. Mary was brought up on a farm.
- 2 She grew up in Wales.
- 3 Her parents let her do what she wanted.
- 4 She wasn't allowed to listen to the radio.
- 5 Life was easy when she went to Cardiff.
- 6 She couldn't get a job in Cardiff.

14.3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Keep a similar meaning.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 My parents <u>are dead</u> now. | My parents <u>aren't alive now</u> |
| 2 It was hard but <u>finally</u> I did it. | It was hard but |
| 3 She's <u>approximately</u> my age. | She's |
| 4 They're <u>almost</u> thirty now. | They're |
| 5 <u>I had to do what my parents wanted.</u> | My parents were |
| 6 My parents <u>let me</u> stay up and watch TV. | I was |
| 7 My mum <u>looked after me</u> in Scotland. | I was |
| 8 I <u>was able to</u> pass my exams <u>but it wasn't easy.</u> | I |
| 9 I <u>didn't go home until</u> late. | I |
| 10 <u>I was allowed to</u> wear what I liked. | My parents |
| 11 I was happy <u>as a child.</u> | I had a happy |
| 12 My grandparents <u>don't work any more.</u> | My grandparents are |

14.4

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

- 1 Where were you brought up?
- 2 What do you particularly remember about your childhood?
- 3 Were your parents strict? What weren't you allowed to do when you were a child?
- 4 How late were you allowed to stay out when you were a teenager?

A Romance

“I had my first date¹ when I was 16, and it was terrible. I took a girl to the cinema but she didn't like the film and looked bored all evening; it was a bad start. Then, when I was 17, I went out with² a girl for three months, but we broke up³ when she met a boy who was two years older than me, and had a car. My first serious relationship⁴ was when I went to university. I got to know⁵ Melanie because we were on the same course. At first we were just friends, then we started going out with each other, and after a few months we realised we were in love. We got engaged⁶ a couple of⁷ years after we left university and then ...”

¹ a planned romantic meeting

⁵ became friends with

² had a romantic relationship with

⁶ formally agreed to marry

³ the relationship ended

⁷ two, perhaps three

⁴ important romantic relationship



B Marriage*

“... we got married¹ the following year. We didn't want a big ceremony², so we had the wedding³ in the local church near Melanie's home with just family and a few friends. Afterwards we had the reception⁴ in a small hotel nearby, and then went on our honeymoon⁵ to Greece.”

* the time when you are married

³ the ceremony when people get married

¹ became husband and wife

⁴ the wedding party

² an important public event

⁵ a holiday just after getting married

(bride)groom

bride



Common mistakes

She got to know Darren at university. (NOT She knew Darren at university.)

Now they plan to get married. (NOT They plan to get marry; or They plan to married.)

She's getting married to Darren next year. (NOT She's getting married with Darren next year.)

C Children

“Just over three years later Melanie got pregnant, and our first child, Cal, was born just two days after our fourth wedding anniversary¹. We had a big celebration².”

¹ a day that is exactly one or more years after an important event

² a time when you do something you enjoy because it is a special day



Language help

www.irLanguage.com

adjective	noun	verb	noun
engaged	engagement	celebrate	celebration
pregnant	pregnancy	marry	marriage

D Divorce*

“Things started to go wrong¹ when I got a job as manager of a sportswear company. I was working six days a week and I had to do a lot of travelling. It was difficult for Melanie as well. She was working during the week, then at weekends she was often alone / on her own² with two young children. I felt I couldn't give up³ my job, and in the end Melanie decided to leave me⁴. The following year we got divorced⁵.”

* when a marriage officially ends

¹ become a problem

² without other people

³ stop doing

⁴ stop living with me

⁵ the marriage officially ended

Exercises

15.1 Put the events in a logical order.

- I went out with Simon.
- We got married.
- I got pregnant three months later.
- We got engaged.
- I got to know Simon.
- Our son was born just after our first anniversary.
- We went on our honeymoon.
- I met Simon at a party.
- We had a big reception.

15.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 The big party you have after the wedding. *reception*
- 2 A romantic meeting you plan before it happens.
- 3 The period of time when you are married.
- 4 How you describe a woman who is going to have a baby.
- 5 The day that is exactly one year, or a number of years, after an important event.
- 6 The name given to the woman and man on their wedding day. and
- 7 Stop doing a job or activity. something up

15.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: When did they get *engaged* ?
B: Last week. They plan to get married in a of years.
- 2 A: Where did they meet?
B: I think he got her at university.
A: And now they're married?
B: Yes, the was last week.
- 3 A: Is it going to be a big wedding?
B: No, they're having a small in the village church.
A: And what about the reception?
B: They're having a reception but no They're going straight back to work.
- 4 A: So, it's all over.
B: Yes. Lily him and moved out last month.
A: Oh dear. Have they had problems for a long time?
B: I think it all started to go when they moved to Woodbridge.
A: And what about Oliver? Is he alone now?
B: Yes, completely on He doesn't want any new relationships yet.
A: But the marriage is definitely over?
B: Yes, I'm afraid they're getting

15.4

Over to you

Answer the questions for you, then, if possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

- 1 Can you remember your first date? (When, and who with?)
- 2 Can you remember your first serious relationship? (Who was it with? Did you break up, or are you still with the same person?)
- 3 Whose was the last wedding you went to?
- 4 What was the last big celebration (other than a wedding) that you went to?

16 Daily routines

A Sleep

“During the week I usually wake up¹ about 7.30 am. If I don't, my mum wakes me up. I get up² a few minutes later. In the evenings I go to bed about 10.30 pm, and usually go to sleep³ straight away⁴. If I have a late night⁵ I try to have a sleep⁶ in the afternoon when I get home from college.”

¹ stop sleeping

² get out of bed

³ start sleeping; *syn* fall asleep

⁴ immediately

⁵ go to bed very late; *opp* have an early night

⁶ a short period of sleeping, e.g. half an hour

B Food

“I have coffee and cereal for breakfast, then have a light lunch¹, maybe a sandwich and an apple, and a snack² in the afternoon. We have our main meal in the evening. If Mum's late home from work, she doesn't bother³ to cook; we just get a takeaway⁴ instead. One of us has to feed⁵ the cat as well.”

¹ have a small meal

² a small amount of food you eat between meals

³ doesn't do something because there is no reason or because it is too much work

⁴ a meal you buy in a restaurant but eat at home

⁵ give food



cereal

C Bathroom routines

“I usually have a shower when I get home from college because my sister, Rosie, and my brother, Marcus, spend so much time in the bathroom in the morning. I only have time to have a wash, clean my teeth (*syn* brush my teeth) and put on a bit of make-up. In the winter I sometimes have a bath instead of¹ a shower. I like to lie in the bath and listen to music.”

¹ in place of (a shower)



Marcus having a shave



Rosie putting on make-up

D Housework*

“Fortunately¹ we've got a cleaner² who does a lot of the housework, and that includes doing my washing³. But I still have to make my bed and do some of my ironing, and I sometimes do the shopping with Mum.”

¹ the work of keeping a home clean and tidy

¹ happening because of good luck; *syn* luckily

² a person who cleans

³ washing my clothes



ironing

Language help

www.irLanguage.com

When we do the shopping we buy food at the supermarket; when we go shopping, it is a leisure activity and we perhaps buy clothes, DVDs, books, etc.

E Spare time*

“On weekdays I usually stay in¹ and watch TV in the evening. At the weekend I go out quite a lot with my friends, either to the cinema or just to a café, and I eat out² once a week. Sometimes friends come round³ and we chat⁴ about clothes, music and college.”

* time when you are not working

¹ stay at home

² eat in a restaurant; *opp* eat in

³ visit me in my home

⁴ have an informal conversation

Exercises

16.1 Find seven more expressions with *have* + [noun] and *do* + [noun] from the opposite page.

have a shower have have have
do do do do

16.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | |
|----------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| 1 get up | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a the dog |
| 2 fall | <input type="checkbox"/> | b my teeth |
| 3 make | <input type="checkbox"/> | c make-up |
| 4 put on | <input type="checkbox"/> | d a week |
| 5 go | <input type="checkbox"/> | e the bed |
| 6 clean | <input type="checkbox"/> | f to sleep |
| 7 feed | <input type="checkbox"/> | g early |
| 8 once | <input type="checkbox"/> | h asleep |

16.3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it and where does it go?

- Does it cost much to have a cleaner to ^{do} the housework?
- My mother usually me up around 7:30, then I get up about 7:45.
- If I have a in the afternoon, I usually eat fruit instead of chocolate.
- I always go on Friday and Saturday, often to the cinema or a club.
- Sometimes friends round to the flat and we play computer games.
- I eat at the weekend, usually in a local Italian or French restaurant.
- I don't with a full meal at lunchtime; I usually just have a light lunch, like a salad.
- I often have for breakfast – usually cornflakes or something like that.
- I don't like doing housework; I have a husband who does most of it.
- When I get emails, I try to reply to them straight.

16.4 Complete the dialogue with a word or phrasal verb from the opposite page in each gap.

- A: Don't ¹ ~~bother~~ to cook dinner tonight.
 B: Why not?
 A: We could go out ² of eating here.
 B: Yeah. Where?
 A: Well, I'd like to try that new Korean restaurant.
 B: That's miles away. No, I think I'd rather ³ and have an ⁴ night.
 A: But it's Friday.
 B: Yes, I know, but I'm tired. Why don't we ask Ryan and Charlotte to ⁵ ?
 You don't have to cook, we can order a ⁶ And we can have a nice ⁷ round the dining table; much better than a noisy restaurant.

16.5

Over to you www.irLanguage.com

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Find three facts from the opposite page that are similar in your routine, and three that are different. Complete the table.

similar	different
1
2
3

A Location*

“We live on the outskirts of town¹, and it’s a very nice location. We used to live in the centre, but we moved² to our present flat when we had children because there’s more space³ for them to play and it has nice views⁴.”

* the place and position of something

¹ on the edge of town

² changed the place where we live

³ an area that is empty or not used

⁴ the things you can see from a place

B Our flat

“This is where we live. We rent¹ a flat on the second floor. There’s a family in the flat downstairs², and a young French couple upstairs, on the top floor. It’s a modern block of flats³, and it’s quite good, although the lift⁴ is small, and there’s no air conditioning⁵.”

¹ pay money every week/month to use it because it isn’t ours

² on a lower level of a building

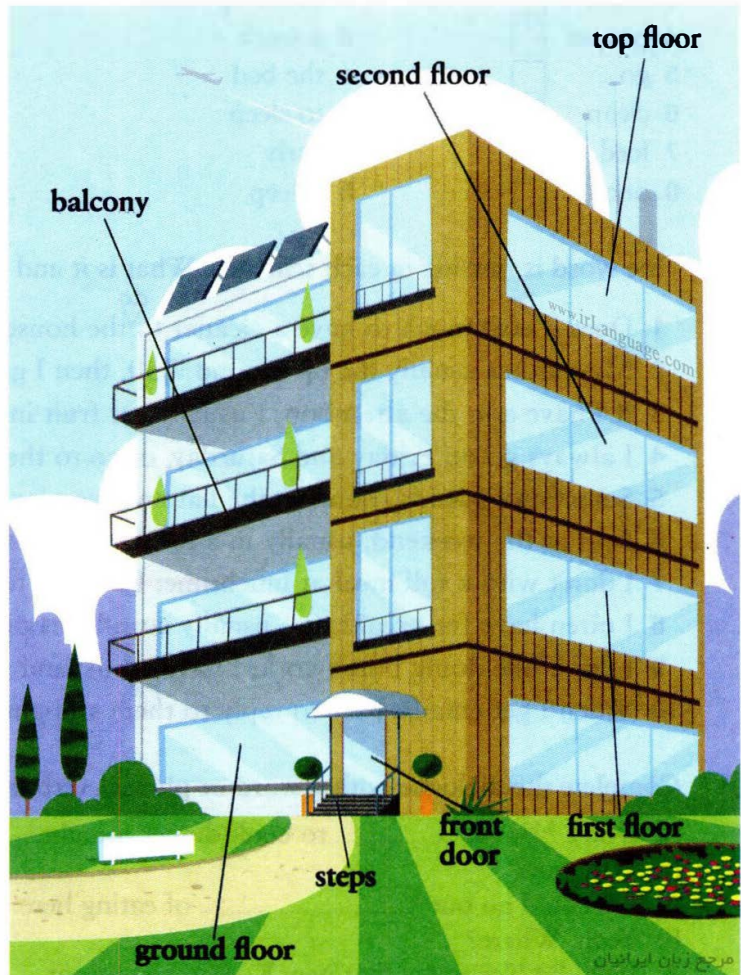
³ a building with a number of flats in it

⁴ the machine that takes people up or down a floor

⁵ a system that keeps the air cool

Language help

Flat is more common in British English; apartment is used in American English but is becoming more common in British English. Apartments are usually in large buildings; flats can be in a large building or part of a larger house.



C A house in the country

“My parents own¹ a cottage². It’s a charming³ house and has lots of character⁴, but like many old buildings, it’s quite dark (*opp* light), quite difficult to heat⁵, and it doesn’t have central heating⁶.”

¹ they bought it

² a small house, that is old and attractive, and usually found in the country

³ pleasant and attractive

⁴ it is interesting and unusual

⁵ make warm or hot

⁶ a system that heats a whole house



cottage

Exercises

17.1 Are the sentences about the people on the opposite page true or false? If the sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 They live in a house. *False. They live in a flat.*
- 2 They used to live on the outskirts of town.
- 3 They own their flat.
- 4 They've got nice views from their flat.
- 5 They live on the first floor.
- 6 There's a lift in the building.
- 7 A French couple live downstairs.
- 8 They own a cottage.
- 9 The cottage has lots of character.
- 10 The cottage is quite cold.

17.2 Are these generally positive or negative features of a home?

- views *positive* air conditioning character
 dark charming no central heating

17.3 Label the pictures.



1 *a block of flats*



2



3



4



5

6

17.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Our flat doesn't have air *conditioning*.
- 2 I live the second floor, and my cousin lives, on the first floor.
- 3 My old flat was very small, but this one has much more
- 4 The flat's in a great : it's near the centre of town but opposite a park and very quiet.
- 5 We live on the of town, but it's only a twenty-minute walk to the centre.
- 6 The flat is on the third floor, but we can sit outside on the
- 7 It's a very big house, so it costs a lot of money to in the winter.
- 8 I'm on the second I usually use the stairs, but take the if I'm feeling lazy.
- 9 I live in Paris. I used to live in Marseilles, but I to Paris when I left university.
- 10 I love my apartment. It has big windows, so it's nice and inside.

17.5

Over to you

Answer the questions about your home.

- 1 Do you live in a house or flat?
- 2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
- 3 Do you own your home or rent it?
- 4 Are you in the centre, or on the outskirts of your town?
- 5 How long have you lived there?
- 6 Do you have these things:
 air conditioning? central heating? a balcony?

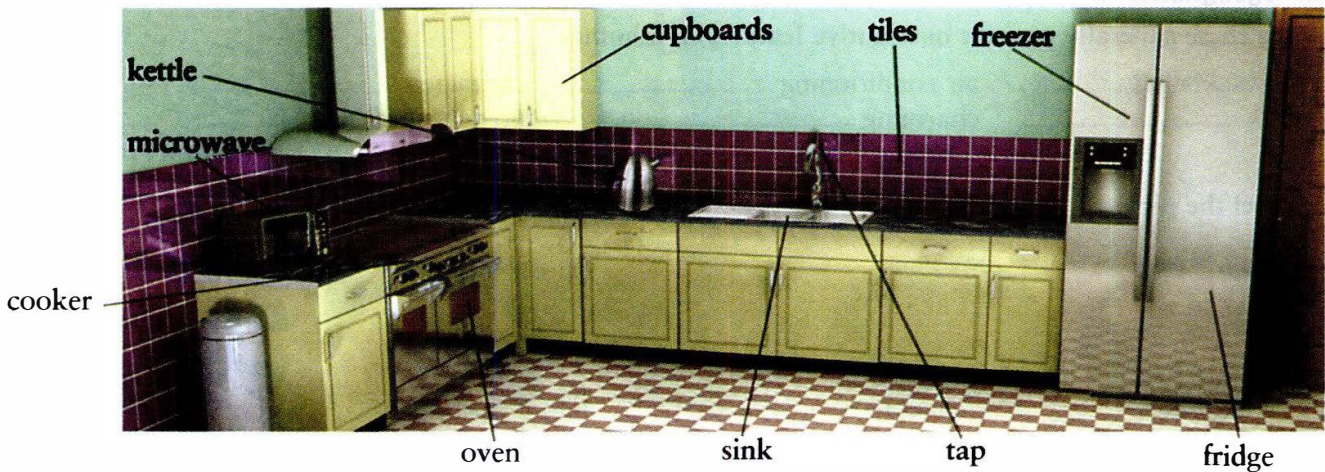
A

Different homes

“When we first got married, we lived in a one-bedroom flat with a small kitchen, a living room and a bathroom. When our first child was born, she had to **share** our bedroom [use something at the same time as someone else]. Now we live in a four-bedroom house. Our bedroom has an **en suite bathroom** [a bathroom connected to the bedroom], our two teenage children have their own rooms [they do not have to share], we have a **spare** room for guests, and another bathroom. Downstairs, there’s a living room, a dining room and a **study** [a room where people can work]. We’ve also got a lovely big kitchen with a fridge/ freezer, a cooker with two ovens and a **dishwasher** [a machine for washing dishes]. Next to it, there’s a small **utility** room where we keep the washing machine.”

Language help

We usually talk about a **sink** in the kitchen, but a **(wash)basin** in the bathroom.



B

Choices*

* when you decide between two or more possibilities

What do you prefer?

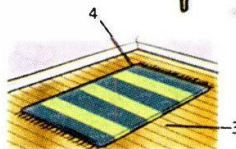
Some people like big soft **sofas**¹ with lots of **cushions**²,



some people like **firm** (opp soft) **armchairs**.



Do you like a **wooden floor**³ with a **rug**⁴,



or a **carpet**?



Curtains,



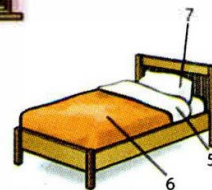
or **blinds**?



A **duvet**,



or a **sheet**⁵ and a **blanket**⁶?
One **pillow**⁷, or two?



Exercises

18.1 You are in the kitchen. Where would you put these things?

- 1 milk? *in the fridge*.....
- 2 food that you want to heat very quickly?
- 3 meat that you are going to cook?
- 4 dirty clothes?
- 5 dirty saucepans?
- 6 clean cups and saucers
- 7 frozen food that you want to keep for several weeks?

18.2 What are these things, and which room(s) do you usually find them in?

- 1 girdef *fridge, in the kitchen*.....
- 2 snik
- 3 nacistur
- 4 shiconus
- 5 ktelet
- 6 bashniswa
- 7 cparte
- 8 lipowl
- 9 shiwang chameni
- 10 kocero
- 11 chmariar
- 12 leits

18.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm happy with curtains or *blinds*..... ; I really don't mind.
- 2 We used to have a floor, but it was a bit noisy so we put down a carpet.
- 3 When I got my new bedroom, my mum gave me a of curtains or blinds.
- 4 My mum works at home, so she spends all day in the on the computer.
- 5 As a child I had to a room with my sister, but now I've got my bedroom.
- 6 We often have guests to stay, but fortunately we've got a room.
- 7 'Dad, there's no water coming out of the in the kitchen sink.'
- 8 Some people like a sheet and, but I prefer a
- 9 There's a family bathroom, but I've got my own shower room next to the bedroom.
- 10 Our kitchen is small but we have a room for the washing machine.

18.4

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What have you got on your kitchen floor?
- 2 What have you got on the bathroom floor?
- 3 What have you got on the floor in the living room?
- 4 Have you got curtains or blinds in your bedroom?
- 5 Have you got a duvet or sheets and blankets on your bed?

18.5

Over to you

Look at section B on the opposite page again. Which do you prefer, and why? Compare your answers with someone else if possible.

19 Everyday problems

A There's something wrong with ...

We use these expressions when there is a problem with machines and other things we use.

There's **something wrong** with the TV. [there is a problem with it]

The light **isn't working**. [isn't functioning; there is no light]

The washing machine **isn't working properly**. [it is functioning, but not very well]

The coffee machine is **out of order**. [not in use, broken]

Language help

We normally use **out of order** for a machine or system that is in a public building, not in the home, e.g. a drinks machine, a public telephone, a lift.

B Problems at home

“I was making myself a cup of coffee yesterday. I **dropped**¹ the first cup on the floor and I had to clear it **up**². I then made myself another cup, **slipped**³ on the wet floor, and **spilt**⁴ coffee **all over**⁵ my T-shirt. I tried to **remove**⁶ it with special washing powder, but it was **hopeless**⁷. I'll have to buy a new T-shirt.”

⁶ get it off

⁷ very bad and impossible to improve

“This morning I decided to have some toast. I **burnt**⁸ the first two pieces, then I discovered we'd **run out of**⁹ bread, so I went to work without any breakfast.”



⁸ cooked something for too long

⁹ there was no more of something

C Out and about

“I was in a **bad mood**¹ because I hadn't had any breakfast, but things **got worse**² when I **missed** my bus and had to walk. It was raining, so I started running. I **fell over**³ and **hit**⁴ my knee on the ground. And when I got to work, I realised that I'd **torn**⁵ my jacket, and I'd **left** some important notes at home.”

¹ feeling unhappy

² became more difficult and unpleasant

³ fell to the ground

⁴ touch something quickly, usually causing injury

⁵ (see picture; **tear**, past tense **tore**, past participle **torn**)



Common mistakes

I **left** my book at home, or I **forgot** my book.
(NOT I forgot my book at home.)

Exercises

19.1 Complete the verb forms with the correct past tense and past participle.

- 1 break / broke / broken
- 2 spill / /
- 3 burn / /
- 4 fall over / /
- 5 run out / /
- 6 tear / /
- 7 hit / /

19.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct ending on the right.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 I dropped the radio | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a on the desk. |
| 2 I've run out | <input type="checkbox"/> | b because the saucepan handle was so hot. |
| 3 I left | <input type="checkbox"/> | c all over the carpet. |
| 4 I tore my shirt | <input type="checkbox"/> | d and now it isn't working. |
| 5 I spilt coffee | <input type="checkbox"/> | e the money. |
| 6 I hit my hand | <input type="checkbox"/> | f the money at home. |
| 7 I burnt myself | <input type="checkbox"/> | g and I don't think I can repair it. |
| 8 I forgot | <input type="checkbox"/> | h of coffee. |

19.3 Complete the stories using words from the box, in the correct form.

spill slip remove fall worse over mood hopeless hit clear

Sophie ¹ spilt tomato sauce all ² the kitchen floor, and her new dress. I tried to ³ up the mess on the floor, while Sophie did her best to ⁴ the marks on her dress. I'm afraid it was ⁵ though, and she was in a really bad ⁶ after that.

The two boys were running downstairs. First Sebastian ⁷ on the bottom step and ⁸ his knee as he landed on the floor, then Nico ⁹ over and landed on top of Sebastian. It got ¹⁰ when Rose fell over trying to help them stand up!

19.4 Write a different reply to each question using expressions from the opposite page.

- 1 I'm cold. What's wrong with the central heating? It isn't working.
- 2 How did you break that glass?
- 3 How did you hit your arm?
- 4 Why can't we watch that programme?
- 5 Where's your homework?
- 6 I can't hear the radio very clearly. What's wrong with it?
- 7 Why can't we use the lift?

19.5

Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions. If possible, ask a friend and write their answers.
Do you do these things? If so, what, why, and how often?

drop things	run out of things	fall over	forget things
burn food	spill things	leave things somewhere	



A Notes and coins

In the UK the **currency** [type of money used] is **sterling** [pounds]; in America it is the **dollar**; in much of Europe it's the **euro**.

Notes

e.g. ten pounds, twenty euros
a **ten-pound note**, a **twenty-euro note**

Coins (in the UK)

e.g. fifty pence (usually spoken as **fifty p**),
a **pound**, a **fifty-pence piece**, but a **one-pound coin**

B Managing your money



“I've had a **bank account** for a few years now, and I make sure my account is always **in credit**¹. I go to the **cashpoint** once a week, so I always have some **cash**² with me, and I **check**³ my account online once a week to see how much money I've got.”



- ¹ having money in the account
- ² money in the form of notes and coins
- ³ look at the details of it

cashpoint

C Money problems

“When I went to university, I had to get a **bank loan**¹ to pay my **fees**². That meant I had to be careful and make sure I didn't **waste money**³, but by the time I finished my degree I **owed**⁴ a lot. One good thing is that I don't have to pay it back until I get a job and I'm **earning**⁵ a **reasonable amount**⁶ of money. At the moment I'm **saving up**⁷ for a new laptop; the one I have is very slow and keeps going wrong. I'd love to have a car as well, but I **can't afford**⁸ it.”

- ¹ money you borrow from a bank
- ² money you pay to use something, or for a service, e.g. a lawyer's fee
- ³ use it badly
- ⁴ had to **pay back** a lot of money to the bank
- ⁵ receiving money for the work I do
- ⁶ quite a lot; \$1 million is a **large amount**
- ⁷ keeping money to buy something in the future
- ⁸ don't have enough money to buy one

D Accommodation*

“This year I'm **renting** a flat with three friends of mine. We had to pay one month's **rent** as a **deposit**¹, but it's a nice place, quite **good value for money**², and the landlord isn't **charging**³ us to use his garage.”

- * places where you live or stay
- ¹ money you pay for something you are going to use, which is then returned to you when you have finished using it
- ² good for the amount of money you pay
- ³ asking someone to pay an amount of money

Language help

We use **rent** when we pay to use something for a long period of time, e.g. *rent a flat*. The noun **rent** is the amount you pay, e.g. *The rent is £400 per month*. We use **hire** when we pay to use something for a short period of time, e.g. *I hired a bike for the day*. Both verbs are used with cars, e.g. *We rented/hired a car when we were on holiday*.

Exercises

20.1 Answer the questions as quickly as possible.

- 1 Is sterling a currency? Yes
- 2 Is a five-pound note worth less than a fifty-pence piece?
- 3 If you rent something, do you own it?
- 4 If you waste money, do you use it well?
- 5 Can you get money from a cashpoint?
- 6 If you are in credit, do you have money in your account?
- 7 Do you pay back a bank loan?
- 8 Is the currency in the United States of America called the euro?
- 9 Do you normally get back a deposit?
- 10 If you 'can afford' something, do you have enough money for it?

20.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 A flat, usually round piece of metal used as money. coin
- 2 Money you borrow from a bank.
- 3 Money you pay to someone for a professional service, e.g. a school.
- 4 Money in the form of notes or coins.
- 5 Money you pay to live in a building that you don't own.
- 6 A machine where you can get money.
- 7 The type of money used in a country.

20.3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Keep the same meaning.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 He's <u>getting</u> £300 a week in his job. | He's <u>earning</u> £300 a week in his job. |
| 2 She <u>used</u> the money <u>badly</u> . | She |
| 3 I <u>don't have enough money</u> to go. | I |
| 4 We could <u>rent</u> a car. | We could |
| 5 He <u>asked</u> us <u>to pay</u> £25. | He |
| 6 <u>I've got to pay back</u> a lot of money. | I |
| 7 I always <u>look at</u> my account carefully. | I always |

20.4 Complete the text.

“I'm nearly 20 now, and I've been ¹ saving up for a car for the last two years. I've been putting money into my bank ², and I try to put in exactly the same ³ every month: £75 from money that I ⁴ doing a job two evenings a week, and £50 that my parents are lending me each month. That means I now ⁵ them £1200, but they said I don't have to ⁶ them until I've got a full-time job. At the moment I'm still living at home, so I don't have to pay for my ⁷, although I will start paying my parents a bit of rent when I finish college and get a job.”

20.5

Over to you

Answer the questions.

- 1 Have you got a bank account? If so, how long have you had it?
- 2 How often do you check your account?
- 3 How often do you use a cashpoint?
- 4 Have you ever had a bank loan? What did you have the loan for?
- 5 Are you saving up for anything at the moment?
- 6 Do you rent the place where you live? If so, did you have to pay a deposit?

A Common problems

What's the matter?	What you should do
A: I've got a sore throat ¹ and a temperature . ²	B: That sounds like flu . You should see a doctor.
A: I've cut my arm; it's bleeding . ³	B: Put a bandage ⁴ round it.
A: I've got a terrible cough . ⁵	B: Go to the chemist and get some cough medicine . [something you take to treat an illness]
A: I've got a headache .	B: Take some tablets ⁶ for the pain. (also pills)
A: I feel sick . ⁷	B: Go to the bathroom quickly!



B Describing pain

We can use different words to describe **pain**. An **ache** describes pain that is not always strong, but often continues. It is used with certain parts of the body.

I've got a **headache**. Simone's got **stomach ache**.

My dad **suffers from** [often has the pain of] **backache**.

For other parts of the body we often use **pain**.

I've got a **pain** in my shoulder/foot.

Ache can also be a verb to describe pain that continues for some time.

By the end of the day my feet were **aching**.

For stronger or more sudden pain, we usually use the verb **hurt**.

My throat **hurts** when I speak.

I hit my leg on the table and it really **hurts** / it's very **painful**.

C Serious illnesses

For **serious** [bad] illnesses, you will probably go into hospital. A person who stays in hospital is called a **patient**. Many patients need an **operation** [when special doctors, called **surgeons**, cut into the body for medical reasons; also called **surgery**].

Lung cancer can be caused by smoking.

Heart attacks can happen very suddenly.

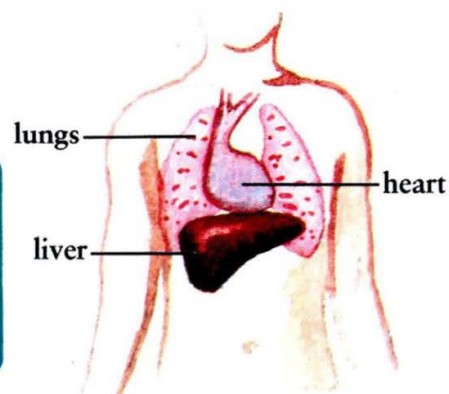
Hepatitis is a disease affecting the **liver**.

Language help

Disease is used to talk about more serious medical problems, often affecting certain parts of the body, e.g. heart disease.

Illness is used to talk about serious and minor medical problems and those affecting the mind, e.g. mental illness.

Disease is not used about a period of illness, e.g. He died after a long illness. (NOT He died after a long disease.)



Exercises

21.1 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the index to help you.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 <u>a</u> che <u>p</u> ain .. <u>s</u> ame..... | 5 <u>l</u> iver <u>d</u> isease |
| 2 <u>c</u> old <u>s</u> tomach .. <u>d</u> ifferent..... | 6 <u>s</u> tomach <u>o</u> peration |
| 3 <u>c</u> ough <u>t</u> hrough | 7 <u>ch</u> emist <u>a</u> che |
| 4 <u>f</u> lu <u>c</u> ut | 8 <u>p</u> atient <u>b</u> andage |

21.2 Complete the sentences with *a* or nothing (-).

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 She's got hepatitis. | 6 I've got backache. |
| 2 I've got <u>a</u> cough. | 7 Leona's got flu. |
| 3 I'm getting sore throat. | 8 My uncle had heart attack. |
| 4 Ben's got headache. | 9 She's got cancer. |
| 5 Luis's got temperature. | 10 I've got pain in my foot. |

21.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Does your finger hurt?
B: Yes, it's very painful
- 2 A: What's wrong with Musa?
B: He feels I think it's something he ate.
- 3 A: Did you hit your foot?
B: Yes, and it really
- 4 A: My hand's bleeding quite badly.
B: Well, put a round it.
- 5 A: Your finger's
B: I know. I cut it using that knife.
- 6 A: Does Tanya still from bad headaches?
B: Yes, she gets them all the time.
- 7 A: What's the matter?
B: My back from sitting at that computer all day.
- 8 A: I understand Laura has had quite a illness.
B: Yeah. She was in hospital for over a week.

21.4 Find five more pairs of words. Why are they pairs?

lung heart surgeon tablets/pills attack liver
 operation ~~cancer~~ hepatitis sore medicine throat

lung and cancer - because you can get lung cancer.

21.5

Over to you مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What do you usually do if you get a headache?
- 2 How often do you get a cough or a sore throat?
- 3 Have you ever been a patient in hospital? If so, what was it like?
- 4 Have you ever had surgery?
- 5 Are there some medicines you always keep in your home? What are they?

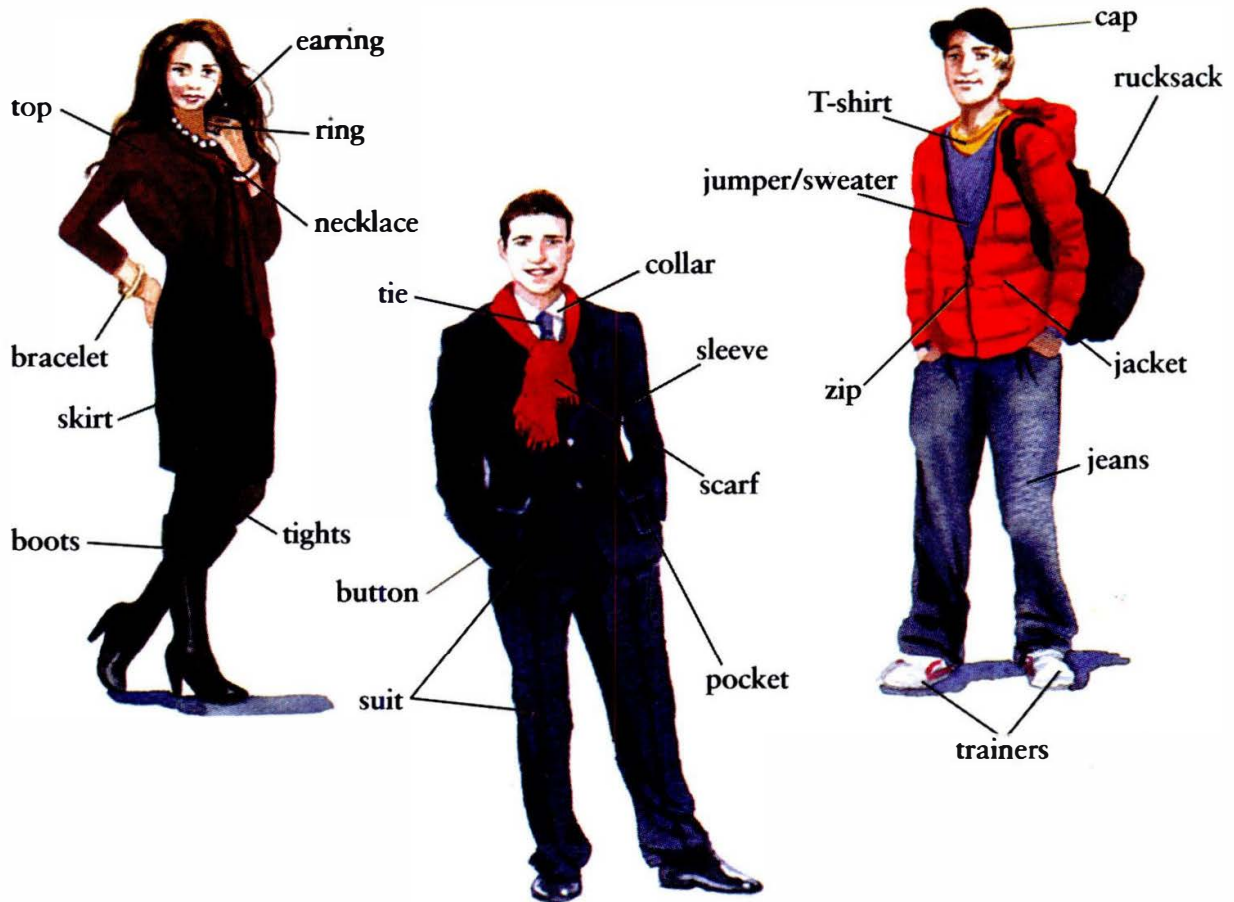
22 Clothes

A Smart, stylish and casual

I think the woman looks **stylish**. [wearing nice clothes and looking attractive; also well-dressed]

The man is **smartly dressed**. [clean and tidy and suitable for formal situations]

The boy's clothes are more **casual**. [comfortable and suitable for informal situations]



B Verbs and phrases used with clothes

As soon as I get up, I have a shower and get dressed [put on my clothes]. I don't eat breakfast.

I have to wear a suit and tie to work, but I usually take off my tie before lunchtime. [remove it; *opp* put something on]

When I get home from work, I usually change into a pair of jeans.

I think I look good in black because dark colours suit me. [I look good in dark colours; *opp* bright colours]

I prefer jackets with a zip; it's easier to undo a zip [open a zip, buttons, etc.] and it's also much quicker to do it up.

Common mistakes

I like clothes. (NOT I like ~~cloth~~ or ~~cloths~~.)

I like your new trousers. (NOT I like your new ~~trouser~~.)

Exercises

22.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

boots earrings button top ring jumper bracelet scarf
necklace zip pocket cap sleeve tights collar

items of clothing	jewellery	parts of clothing
boots		

22.2 Find five more things that are different in the pictures.

- The first woman is wearing a ring; the second isn't.
-
-
-
-
-
-



22.3 Complete the sentences.

- Why don't you take **off**..... your coat?
- Anna looks really nice purple.
- He was very smartly- this morning. He had his best suit on.
- It took me ages to put these boots.
- You should wear bright colours more often; they you.
- Hiroko couldn't do the zip on her jacket.
- I changed a pair of jeans as soon as I got home.
- I took my tie off and the top button of my shirt.
- My brother takes his books to school in a He says it's easier to carry them on his back.
- I had a quick shower, got, then joined the others for breakfast.

22.4

Over to you

Women, answer these questions.

- What jewellery do you usually wear?
- Which colours suit you best?
- Do you prefer smart or casual clothes?
- Do you generally look quite stylish?
- Do you often wear a hat or a cap?
- Do you often wear T-shirts or trainers?

Men, answer these questions.

- How often do you wear a suit?
- How often do you wear a tie?
- Do you usually do up the top button of your shirt?
- Do you often change into jeans after school or work?
- Do you often wear a hat or a cap?
- Do you often wear T-shirts or trainers?

A Fashion

FASHION: Which are you?

- I usually **shop**¹ with a friend.
- I always **try on clothes**² before I buy them.
- I sometimes buy clothes that don't **suit me**³, just because they're **fashionable**⁴.
- If I buy trousers or a skirt, I buy a shirt or top to **go with**⁵ it at the same time.
- My **wardrobe**⁶ is full of clothes that I buy and hardly ever wear.
- I like to buy **designer labels**⁷, even though they're more expensive.
- I like wearing fashionable clothes, but the price has to be **reasonable**⁸.
- I never buy clothes just because they're **in fashion**⁹.
- I like to **dress in**¹⁰ clothes that are casual but still look quite fashionable.
- I'm always happy with what I've **got on**¹¹.

- ¹ buy things in shops
- ² put clothes on in a shop to see what they are like
- ³ look good on me
- ⁴ popular at that particular time
- ⁵ look good together
- ⁶ a large cupboard for keeping clothes in
- ⁷ clothes made by famous designers, e.g. Versace, Dolce & Gabbana
- ⁸ not expensive
- ⁹ fashionable
- ¹⁰ wear a particular type, style or colour of clothes
- ¹¹ am wearing

Language help

www.irLanguage.com

If two things **match**, they are a similar colour or type. If two things **go with** each other, they look good together.

*Catherine's bag **matches** her coat. Catherine's bag **goes with** her coat.*

If something **suits** you, it looks good on you. If something **fits** you, it is the right size.

B In a clothes shop

A **shop assistant** [a person who works in a shop] is **servicing** different customers [helping them to buy things].

SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?

CUSTOMER 1: No, I'm **being served**, thanks. [another shop assistant is already helping me]

SHOP ASSISTANT: Do you need any help?

CUSTOMER 2: Yes, I've just tried on this jacket in a size 12, and it didn't really **fit** me; it's a bit **tight**. [too small around the body; *opp* loose/big] Have you got it in a bigger size?

SHOP ASSISTANT: We have got a size 14, but not in pink, I'm afraid.

CUSTOMER 2: Oh, **that's a shame**. [that is disappointing; *syn* **that's a pity**] OK. I'll leave it, thanks. [I have decided not to buy it; *opp* I'll **take it/them**]

SHOP ASSISTANT: OK. I'm sorry about that. ... Can I help you?

CUSTOMER 3: Yes, I'm **looking for** a skirt and this looks nice. [I want to find a skirt] Can I try it on?

SHOP ASSISTANT: Yes, of course. The **changing rooms** are down there. [the place where you can try on clothes]

Exercises

23.1 Are these pairs similar in meaning or different in meaning?

- 1 *in fashion* and *fashionable* similar
- 2 *wardrobe* and *changing room*
- 3 *I'll take it* and *I'll leave it*
- 4 *match something* and *go with something*
- 5 *tight* and *loose*
- 6 *fit someone* and *suit someone*
- 7 *that's a shame* and *that's a pity*

23.2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1 I often shop with my mother. | I often go <u>shopping with my mother</u> |
| 2 These watches are fashionable. | These watches are in |
| 3 Your top matches your skirt. | Your top goes |
| 4 I like what I'm wearing. | I like what I've |
| 5 Those trousers suit you. | Those trousers look |
| 6 Are they the right size? | Do they ? |
| 7 I'd like it to be quite loose. | I don't want it to be too |
| 8 She always wears black. | She always in black. |

23.3 Which words are being defined?

- 1 be the right size fit
- 2 not cheap, but not expensive
- 3 a large cupboard for keeping clothes in
- 4 popular with people at a particular time
- 5 the place where you try on clothes in a shop
- 6 Armani and Calvin Klein are examples of this
- 7 a person who works in a shop
- 8 look after customers and help them to buy things

23.4 Complete the dialogues.

- SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?
 CUSTOMER 1: I'm ¹ looking for a top. This one's quite nice. I think I'll
² it on.
- SHOP ASSISTANT: Of course. The ³ room is just over there.
- SHOP ASSISTANT: Do you need any help?
 CUSTOMER 2: No, I'm being ⁴ , thanks.
- SHOP ASSISTANT: How was the top?
 CUSTOMER 1: I'm afraid it didn't ⁵ very well. It was a bit
⁶ under the arms.
- SHOP ASSISTANT: Oh, that's a ⁷ Would you like a bigger size?
 CUSTOMER 1: No, I don't think so. In actual fact, it wasn't just the ⁸
 I don't think it ⁹ me, actually. I think it's really for a
 younger person. I'll ¹⁰ it, thanks.

23.5

Over to you

Look at the text at the top of the opposite page again. Which statements are true for you?
 If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

In a supermarket



www.irLanguage.com

How do supermarkets make us¹ spend more money?

They put **fresh²** bread, as it smells lovely, near the **entrance³** to make us feel hungry – and hungry shoppers spend more. They also rearrange things and put them in different places; this makes us spend more time in the store and that means spending more money. They put sweets and chocolate near the checkout, so it is easy to add bars of chocolate to our basket or trolley while we are waiting in the **queue⁴**. And they put the most expensive **items⁵** on the middle shelves where you are more **likely⁶** to see them. And be careful of **special offers⁷**, e.g. three for the price of two. People often buy more than they need and **throw away** half of it.

¹ cause us to do or be something, e.g. *I don't like rain; it makes me depressed.*

² just made/cooked

³ the place where you go into a building

⁴ a line of people who are waiting for something

⁵ an *item* is a single thing

⁶ If you are likely to do something, you will probably do it.

⁷ cheaper prices than normal

Shopping centres and street markets

Some people like modern **shopping centres¹** because everything is **under one roof²** and it is **convenient³**. There's a **wide range⁴** of shops, and if there is anything wrong with something you buy, the shop will **replace⁵** it, or give you a **refund⁶**.



Other people prefer going to **street markets** because they like the **atmosphere⁷** you get from the different stalls. Food and clothes are also usually cheaper in street markets. Sometimes you can try to agree a lower price for something you buy in a street market; we call this **haggling**. Of course, if you don't like what you buy in a street market, you can't normally take it back and get a refund.

¹ large covered shopping areas

² in one place

³ practical and easy to use

⁴ different things of the same type

⁵ exchange it for another one

⁶ money that is paid back to you when you return something

⁷ the feeling in a place or situation

Exercises

24.1 True or false? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 If you have a lot of things to buy, you need a basket.
False. If you have a lot of things to buy, you need a trolley.
- 2 Supermarkets arrange things to make us spend more money.
.....
- 3 The checkout is where you pay for things.
.....
- 4 Expensive items are on the top shelves.
.....
- 5 If something is fresh, it has just been made.
.....
- 6 There are often lovely smells near the entrance.
.....
- 7 Sweets are often near the checkout.
.....
- 8 It's always a good idea to buy things on special offer.
.....

24.2 Mark the main stress on these words. Use the index to help you.

'atmosphere convenient checkout entrance a refund replace item

24.3 Are these statements true of shopping centres, street markets, or both?

- 1 They are usually quite modern. *shopping centres*
- 2 Everything is under one roof.
- 3 You buy things from stalls.
- 4 You can haggle.
- 5 You can normally get refunds.
- 6 They can be very convenient.

24.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I took the shoes back to the shop, but they wouldn't give me a *refund*.
- 2 It me angry when shops refuse to give you a refund or things.
- 3 I often buy bananas but forget to eat them, and then I have to them away.
- 4 When I got to the checkout, there was a long of people waiting.
- 5 There's a special on melons – buy one, get one free!
- 6 The vegetables are near the, where we came in.
- 7 I like that supermarket because they have a wide of meat and cheese.
- 8 In my local street market, there's just a really nice : it's very busy, but everyone is friendly and there's lots of colour.
- 9 I am more to buy something if it's a special offer, because it seems cheaper.

24.5

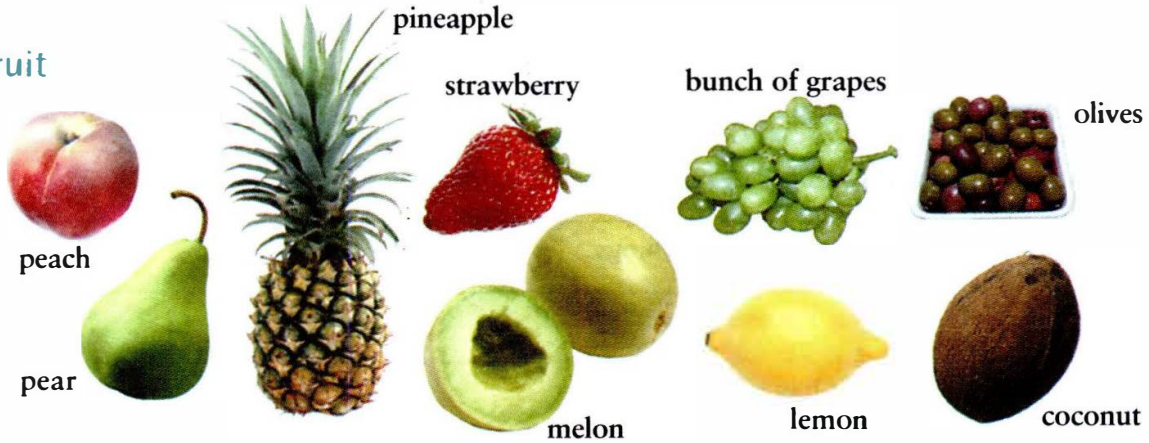
Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

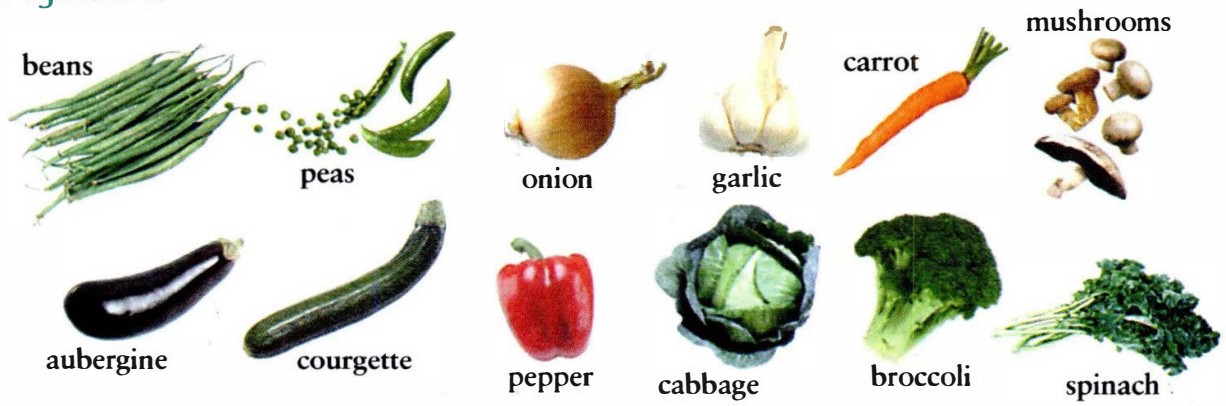
- 1 How often do you shop in supermarkets? What do you think of them?
- 2 How often do you go to shopping centres? Do you like them?
- 3 How often do you go to street markets? Do you like them?
- 4 Do you haggle for things when you're shopping?
- 5 Have you ever asked for a refund?

25 Food

A Fruit

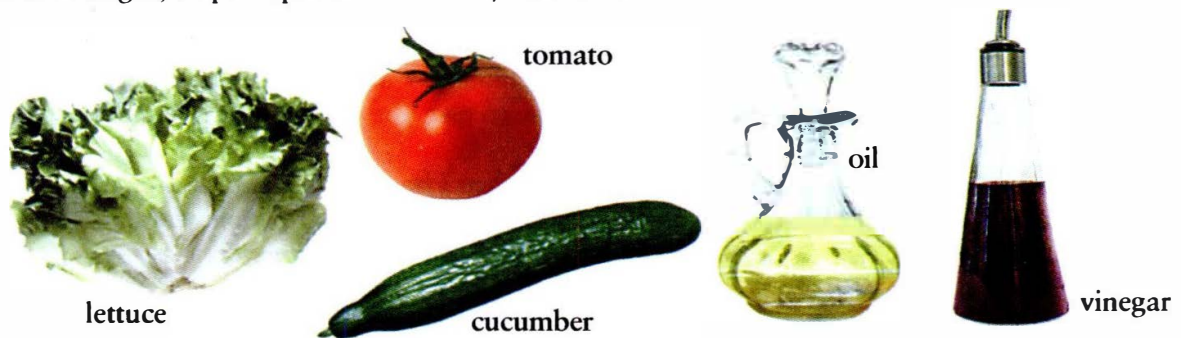


B Vegetables



C Salad

A salad is usually a mixture of uncooked ingredients. In Britain it mainly has lettuce, as well as tomato, cucumber, onion, and other things. We often put salad dressing (usually oil and vinegar, or perhaps oil and lemon) on salad.



D Meat, fish and seafood

Animal:	cow	calf [young cow]	lamb [young sheep]	pig	chicken/hen
Meat:	beef	veal	lamb	pork	chicken

A person who does not eat meat is a vegetarian.



Exercises

25.1 Write down one vegetable and fruit beginning with these letters.

	vegetable	fruit
1 the letter <i>p</i>	<u>peas</u>.....	.....
2 the letter <i>g</i>
3 the letter <i>m</i>
4 the letter <i>s</i>
5 the letter <i>o</i>

25.2 Find a word from each box where the underlined letters are pronounced the same.

carrot 1	onion	tomato	melon 1
lettuce	prawn	pork	chicken
aubergine	salmon	lamb	mushroom

25.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

1 pork	veal	<u>salmon</u>	beef	<u>salmon is a fish, the others are meat</u>
2 lettuce	cabbage	tomato	cucumber	.....
3 pork	lamb	beef	crab	.....
4 peach	onion	pepper	courgette	.....
5 crab	broccoli	mussels	prawn	.....
6 carrots	chicken	beans	aubergine	.....

25.4 Do you usually eat the skin (the outside) of these fruits? (Answer Yes, Sometimes or No.)

pineapple	<u>No</u>	peaches	.....
melon	.....	pears	.....
grapes	.....	lemon	.....

25.5 Answer the questions.

- 1 What do we call the meat from a cow, lamb, calf, and a pig? beef..... ,
- 2 What's the main ingredient in a green salad?
- 3 What are the two most common things we put in salad dressing? and
- 4 What do we usually call someone who doesn't eat meat?
- 5 What do we call a number of grapes that grow together? A of grapes.

25.6

Over to you

Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 is/are more common than
- 2 is/are more expensive than
- 3 A mixed salad usually has,,
- 4 We don't often grow
- 5 We don't often eat
- 6 is/are my favourite

26 Cooking

A Ways of cooking food

You boil potatoes or rice in a **saucepan**.
You can **fry** sausages in a **frying pan**.
You **grill** toast or meat under a **grill**.
You roast meat [using oil] in the **oven**.
You also **bake** cakes [without oil] in the **oven**.
You barbecue meat and fish on a **barbecue**.
Food which is not cooked is **raw**.



B Preparing and cooking food

Peel the potatoes [remove the skin] and boil them.
While they're boiling, **chop** an onion. [cut it into small pieces]
Fry the onion before **adding** some chopped tomatoes. [putting them together with the onions]
Then **stir** it all for a few minutes. [move it around in a saucepan using a spoon]

C What does it taste like?

Chefs [people who cook food in a restaurant as a job] always **taste** the food [put a small amount in their mouth to see what it is like] while they are cooking.
I don't like the taste of too much garlic.
I tried the soup and it tasted a bit strange.
Michel's food is very **tasty**. [has a good taste]
Indian food is a bit too **spicy** for me. [with a strong hot flavour]
You get ice cream in different **flavours**. [the type of taste that food or drink has, e.g. vanilla, coffee, strawberry, etc.]
Lena said her pasta was **horrible** [terrible, unpleasant], but I thought it was **delicious** [fantastic, with a wonderful taste].

Language help

We use the word **sour** to describe the taste of lemons (*opp* **sweet**), but usually **bitter** to describe coffee that is strong and has a sharp unpleasant taste (*opp* **smooth**). Strong, dark chocolate can also be described as bitter, but this is not always negative.

D Are you a good cook?

I'm a bit nervous when I cook, so I always follow a **recipe** [the cooking instructions for a particular dish, e.g. lasagne], and make sure I have all the right **ingredients** [the different food you need to make a particular meal] before I start. However, I am quite good at making **pies**, especially apple **pie**. (Pie is pronounced / / like 'my'.)



Common mistakes

A person who cooks well is a good **cook** (NOT a good **cooker**). The **cooker** is the large piece of equipment you use for cooking. You could also say that you are **good/bad at** cooking (NOT good/bad **in** cooking), e.g. *I'm quite good at cooking fish*.

Also we 'cook' a type of food, e.g. *I'm cooking some beef*, but we 'make' a dish, e.g. *I'm making dessert*. (NOT *I'm cooking dessert*.)

Exercises

26.1 Write down five more ways of cooking food.

boil..... , , , ,
..... ,

26.2 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

<u>ch</u> ef	Is it like <u>sh</u> oe or <u>ch</u> ief?	shoe	<u>o</u> ven	Is it like <u>lo</u> ve or <u>lo</u> nely?
<u>r</u> aw	Is it like <u>no</u> w or <u>do</u> or?		<u>pie</u>	Is it like <u>pe</u> a or <u>lie</u> ?
<u>s</u> our	Is it like <u>mo</u> re or <u>ho</u> ur?		<u>s</u> aucepan	Is it like <u>fo</u> ur or <u>fl</u> ower?

26.3 Cross out the wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- The paella was very ~~tasteful~~. tasty.....
- My brother is a very good cooker.
- Don't forget to heat up the fry pan before you add the aubergine.
- This chocolate is very sour.
- I'm afraid my mother has never been very good in cooking.
- You can buy this ice cream in five different tastes.

26.4 Which words are being defined?

- The flavour that something has in your mouth when you eat it. taste.....
- A person who cooks food as their job.
- Having a good taste.
- The large piece of equipment in the kitchen for cooking food.
- The word to describe the taste of lemons.
- Not cooked.
- Having a fantastic taste. The opposite is

26.5 Explain what the person did, using the correct word.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 I got the list of food and cooking instructions. | You got the <u>recipe</u> |
| 2 I bought all the food I needed for the dish. | You bought all the |
| 3 First I removed the skin of the potatoes. | You the potatoes. |
| 4 I cooked the potatoes in water. | You the potatoes. |
| 5 Then I cut the onions into small pieces. | You the onions. |
| 6 I cooked the onions in a frying pan. | You the onions. |
| 7 I put the potatoes together with the onion. | You the potatoes to the onion. |
| 8 I put in some milk and moved it round in the pan. | You put in milk and it. |
| 9 Then I put a little in my mouth to see what it was like. | You it. |

26.6

Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Do you eat these things in your country?
a) raw fish b) roast beef c) fried rice d) baked potato e) barbecued chicken
- Do you like these things?
a) bitter chocolate b) spicy food c) chocolate-flavoured ice cream d) the taste of garlic
- How often do you cook food on a barbecue?
- Are you a good cook? If so, what are you good at?

27 City life

A The rush hour*

“For me, the rush hour is the worst time of day. Everywhere is busy, and everyone seems to be in a hurry¹. I usually drive to work, but sometimes I get stuck² in traffic jams³, and when I get to work I find there’s nowhere to park⁴ because the car park⁵ is already full. But if I get the bus, it takes me longer, and that makes the journey very stressful⁶. When I get home in the evenings I often feel exhausted⁷ – more from the travelling than from my work.”

* the time when people travel to and from work

¹ want to go somewhere / do something quickly

² become unable to move or go anywhere

³ long lines of cars that are not moving

⁴ no place to leave the car

⁵ place to leave a car

⁶ causing a lot of worry

⁷ very tired

Common mistakes

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

The situation was **stressful**, and I was very **stressed** (NOT I was **stressing**, or it was **stressing**).

I couldn't find a **car park**. OR I couldn't find a **parking space**. (NOT I couldn't find a **parking**.)

B The nightlife*



“One of the advantages of¹ living in the city is the **nightlife**. The **town centre** is always **lively**² in the evening, and there is a **wide variety of**³ bars, clubs and restaurants to go to. If you are more interested in **culture** and **cultural activities**, you can go to the cinema, the theatre, concerts, art galleries, etc.”

* places to visit in the evening for social reasons

¹ the positive things about a situation;

opp disadvantages

² full of activity

³ many different things

C Advantages and disadvantages

“Cities always seem **crowded**¹, and they can be **dirty** (*opp* clean) and **dangerous** (*opp* safe) places to live. **Pollution**² is worse in big cities, and so is the **crime rate**³. I only walk home **at night**⁴ if I’m with a friend. When I’m on my own, I get a taxi.

Life in cities is also more expensive. Flats cost a lot, and I think you get better **value for money**⁵ in a smaller town or village.

On the positive side, you get⁶ a real **mix**⁷ of people and nationalities in a big city; that makes life more interesting. I also enjoy the fact that there’s always something going on⁸ in a big city, so life is never **dull**⁹.”

¹ full of people; *opp* quiet

² dirty air and water

³ the number of crimes that happen

⁴ in the period when it is dark

⁵ If something is **good value for money**, you are happy with what you receive for the amount of money you pay.

⁶ you find / there exists

⁷ different types

⁸ happening

⁹ boring; *opp* exciting

Exercises

27.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 town | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a for money |
| 2 traffic | <input type="checkbox"/> | b hour |
| 3 night | <input type="checkbox"/> | c rate |
| 4 value | <input type="checkbox"/> | d centre |
| 5 crime | <input type="checkbox"/> | e space |
| 6 rush | <input type="checkbox"/> | f jam |
| 7 car | <input type="checkbox"/> | g life |
| 8 parking | <input type="checkbox"/> | h park |

27.2 Write the opposite.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1 It's safe. <u>It's dangerous.</u> | 4 It was very exciting. |
| 2 It was crowded. | 5 There are advantages. |
| 3 It's very clean. | 6 There's a place to park. |

27.3 Complete the dialogues with one word in each gap.

- A: Is there plenty to do in the evening?
B: Yes, the nightlife is great.
- A: And are there lots of activities in the town?
B: Yes. There's a cinema, theatre, concerts, and so on.
- A: Is it good for shopping?
B: Yes, there's a of shops.
- A: Are you worried about walking home late in the evening?
B: Yes, it can be dangerous at
- A: Is the traffic bad?
B: Yes, I often get in traffic jams.
- A: Is your flat expensive?
B: Well, it's not cheap but I think it's quite good for money.

27.4 Rewrite the sentences without the underlined words. Keep the meaning the same.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 There were <u>different types</u> of people there. | There was a good <u>mix</u> of people there. |
| 2 I was <u>very tired</u> . | I was |
| 3 I was very <u>nervous and worried</u> . | I was very |
| 4 The place is always <u>full of activity</u> . | The place is always very |
| 5 The <u>air is dirty</u> . | There's a lot of |
| 6 They want to do everything <u>very quickly</u> . | They want to do everything in a |
| 7 There was nowhere to <u>leave the car</u> . | There was nowhere to |
| 8 There isn't much <u>happening</u> here. | There isn't much here. |
| 9 Poverty <u>doesn't exist</u> here. | You don't here. |

27.5

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- What's the rush hour like where you live?
- What's the nightlife like in your town?
- Is it good for cultural activities?
- Is there much pollution?
- Is the crime rate bad?
- What are the advantages/disadvantages of where you live?

A Surrounded by nature

“I grew up in the countryside where I was surrounded by¹ nature. As children, we used to play on the banks² of the river and in the woods³. In the summer we picked⁴ apples and blackberries; in the autumn we often picked mushrooms. The seasons⁵ were all different, and I loved the scenery⁶, the open spaces⁷, and the fresh air⁸. I still do.”

¹ nature was everywhere around me

² the side of the river

³ groups of trees

⁴ took them from the tree/plant

⁵ spring, summer, autumn, winter

⁶ the natural beauty you see around you

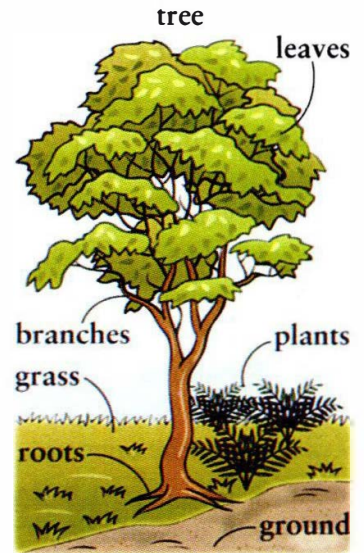
⁷ empty areas of land

⁸ naturally clean air

Common mistakes

I like being in the countryside. OR I like being surrounded by nature.
(NOT I like being in the nature.)

مرجع زبان ایرانیان



B Working in the country

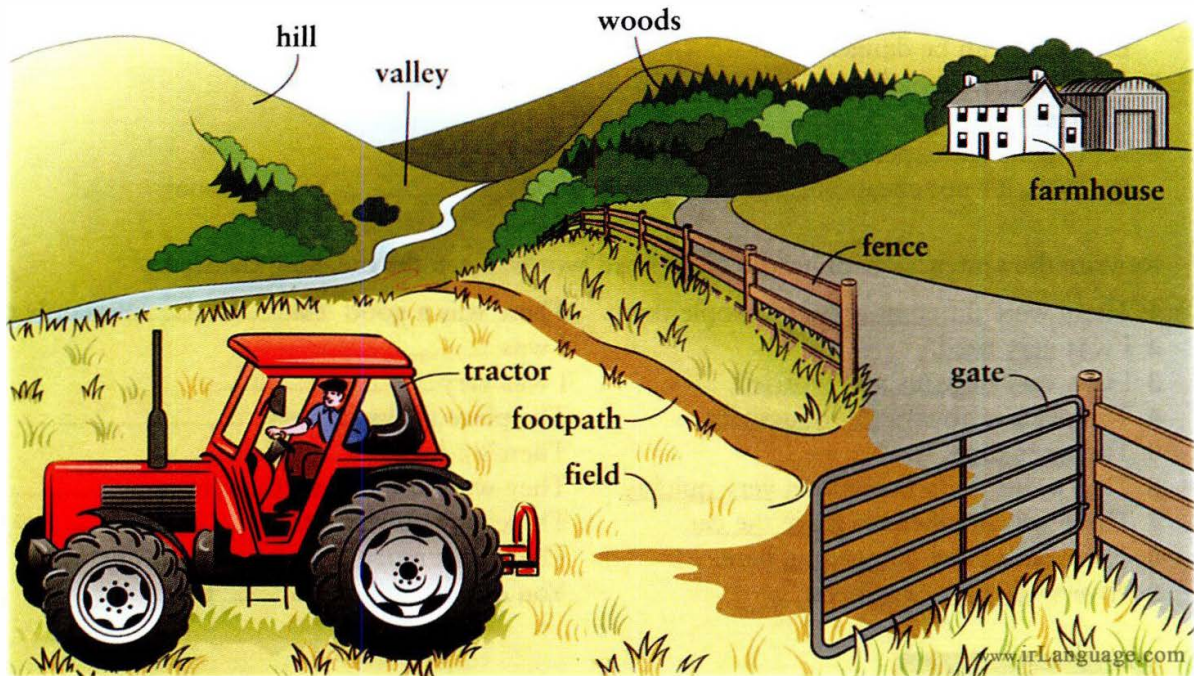
“My uncle owns¹ a farm. He keeps² a few animals, but mostly he grows crops like rice, wheat and potatoes. Farming is a hard life: my uncle is usually up³ at five in the morning, and sometimes his work isn't finished until sunset⁴.”

¹ has (something that legally belongs to him)

² owns and looks after them

³ not in bed

⁴ when the sun goes down in the evening



C The disadvantages of country life

“The worst thing about living in a village¹ is that there isn't much to do in the evening, apart from going to the village pub. The nearest town is eight miles away², and public transport³ is hopeless⁴. And, of course, you don't get⁵ many shops in a village.”

¹ a place smaller than a town

² a distance from a place

³ buses and trains for people to use

⁴ terrible

⁵ there aren't / you don't find

Exercises

28.1 These things all grow, but what are they? Put the letters in the right order.

- | | | | |
|----------|--------------------|------------|-------|
| 1 seret | <u>trees</u> | 5 tnpal | ..... |
| 2 sargs | ..... | 6 toros | ..... |
| 3 velase | ..... | 7 chesranb | ..... |
| 4 odows | ..... | 8 roscp | ..... |

28.2 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: It must be beautiful when the sun goes down over the valley.
B: It is. The sunsets..... are lovely here.
- 2 A: Have you ever lived in a town?
B: No, I've always lived in the
- 3 A: Is Dad yet?
B: He must be. He's not in bed.
- 4 A: Is it your dad's farm?
B: No, he doesn't it. He's just the farm manager.
- 5 A: Do you enjoy the summer?
B: Yes, but spring is my favourite
- 6 A: Did it rain a lot last night?
B: Yes. When I went outside this morning, the was very wet.
- 7 A: Do they many animals?
B: Yes, they've got sheep, cows and goats.

28.3 Look at the picture in section B again, then cover it and complete the text.

We walked alongside the ¹fence....., opened the ²....., and said 'hello' to the man on the ³..... We then followed the ⁴..... across the ⁵..... and down into the ⁶..... We stopped and had a picnic by the river. After that, we walked up through the ⁷..... and then finally back to the ⁸....., where we stopped and bought some eggs.

28.4 Cover the left-hand page. Complete the advantages and disadvantages of living in the country.

Some of the best things about living in the country are:

- the beautiful ¹scenery.....
- the open ².....
- the fresh ³.....
- being able to go out and ⁴..... fruit
- the fact you are ⁵..... by nature.

Some of the ⁶..... things about living in the country are that:

- you don't ⁷..... many shops
- ⁸..... transport is ⁹.....
- there isn't ¹⁰..... to do in the evening, and the nearest town might be a long way ¹¹.....

28.5

Over to you

What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of living in the countryside? Do you agree with the ideas above? Can you think of any other advantages and disadvantages? If possible, discuss your ideas with someone else.

A

Vehicles

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.



bus



coach



lorry (also called truck)



van



bicycle



motorbike

B

Travelling around

bus/coach	train	plane	taxi	bicycle
bus/coach driver	train driver	pilot	taxi driver	cyclist
(£) bus fare	train fare	airfare	fare	
get / catch / go by	get / catch / go by	fly	get/take	go by bike / cycle / ride a bike
get on/off	get on/off	get on/off	get in / out (of)	get on/off
bus stop / bus station	platform / train station	airport	taxi rank	
journey	journey	flight		www.irLanguage.com

I go to work by **bus**. It's only three stops.

We got the **train** to Cardiff, but the **journey** was terrible.

When the **bus fares** went up last month, my dad started cycling to work.

I got **out** of the taxi and almost walked away without paying the **fare**.

If there are more **flights**, **airfares** should be cheaper.

We were going to get the **train** to Paris, but in the end we decided to **fly**.

Common mistakes

It was a good **journey**. (NOT It was a good ~~travel~~.)

C

Are you happy with public transport?*

Where I live buses are not very **convenient**¹; the nearest bus stop is half a mile **away**². And when I do get the bus, I often have to **wait in a queue**³ for about twenty minutes, and then three come along at the same time!

* buses and trains for people to use

¹ near or easy to use

² the distance from a place

³ stand in a line

People are always **complaining about**⁴ the bus service, but where I live it's good. I've got a bus stop **round the corner**⁵ and buses **run** every ten minutes for most of the day, and they're usually **reliable**⁶.

⁴ saying they are unhappy / not satisfied with

⁵ very near

⁶ you can trust them

I get the train to work. Trains are expensive – a **return**⁷ to Oxford is twenty pounds – but I've got a **season ticket**⁸, and that makes it cheaper. My only real **complaint** is that if I **miss**⁹ my train, I have to wait half an hour for the next one.

⁷ a ticket for a journey to a place and back

⁸ a ticket you can use many times within a period of time without paying each time

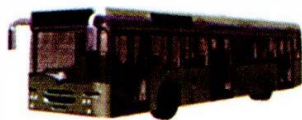
⁹ don't catch (a train or bus)

Exercises

29.1 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

- 1 We were late, so we had to get / catch a taxi.
- 2 You mustn't *ride* / *drive* a motorbike without a helmet in the UK.
- 3 She told him to *get in* / *get on* the car and fasten his seat belt.
- 4 The *journey* / *travel* to the airport takes half an hour.
- 5 Trains to the airport *travel* / *run* every half hour.
- 6 The pilot didn't want to *drive* / *fly* the plane in such bad weather.
- 7 They left a bit late and *lost* / *missed* the bus.
- 8 I see that train *fares* / *tickets* are going up again.
- 9 You mustn't speak to the bus *pilot* / *driver* when he is driving.
- 10 We must get *off* / *out* the bus at the next *station* / *stop*.

29.2 Test your knowledge. Can you label the vehicles without looking at the opposite page?



1 bus



3



5



2



4



6

29.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I wasn't happy with the service, so I made a complaint
- 2 The flight was fine but we had a terrible from the airport to our hotel.
- 3 Where I live, the public transport is not very because the nearest bus stop is two kilometres, and there are no trains at all.
- 4 The train station is just round the from where I live.
- 5 Buses are not very Sometimes they come every five minutes, but other times you have to wait for forty minutes.
- 6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long of people.
- 7 Train fares are crazy: a to Glasgow costs more than two singles.
- 8 People are always about the buses, but I don't think they're that bad.
- 9 I use the trains every day for work, so I've got a ticket.
- 10 Your train is going to depart from six at 10:25.

29.4

Over to you

Answer the questions about transport in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Are trains more reliable than buses?
- 2 Are return tickets usually twice the price of a single?
- 3 Is where you live convenient for public transport? Why? / Why not?
- 4 Do you have a season ticket for the bus or train? Does it save you much money?
- 5 How often do you take a taxi? Why, and where do you go to?
- 6 How often do you ride a bike?

A

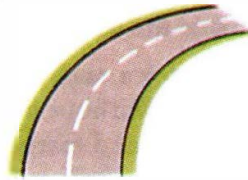
Roads



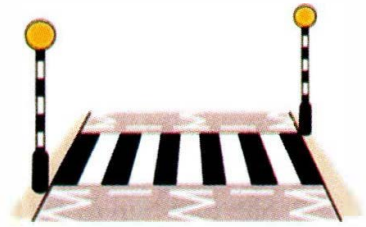
traffic lights



(road) junction



a bend in the road
(this road bends
to the right)

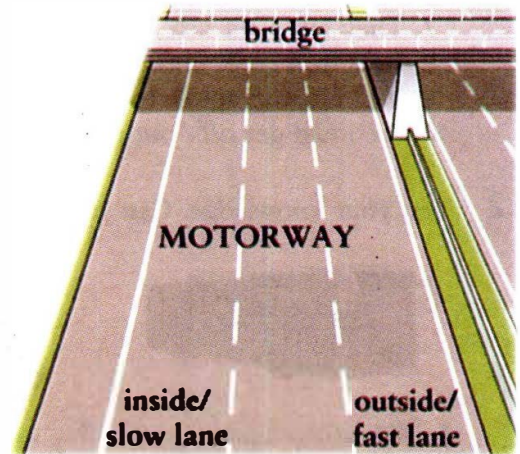


pedestrian crossing



no overtaking
[you can't pass
another car]

speed limit



B

Finding your way

“Yesterday, I got lost¹ on my way to² the airport. I decided to use side roads and go via³ the village of Pensford, but I took the wrong turning⁴ just before I got there, and I ended up⁵ in a supermarket car park. Fortunately I was able to ask someone the way⁶, and a very kind woman directed⁷ me to the A38, where I could then follow signs for the airport.”

¹ didn't know where I was

² while I was going to (the airport)

³ go through somewhere to get to a destination

⁴ corner where one road meets another

⁵ found myself in a place I didn't expect to be in

⁶ ask how to get to a place

⁷ told me how to get to a place

C

An accident

“I saw an accident this morning on the main road¹ into town. A pedestrian² – a young boy – stepped off the pavement³ and into the road just as a car was approaching⁴. The driver braked⁵, but the car swerved⁶ and crashed into a parked car⁷ on the opposite side of the road. Fortunately the driver wasn't injured but both cars were quite badly damaged.”

¹ important road

² a person walking

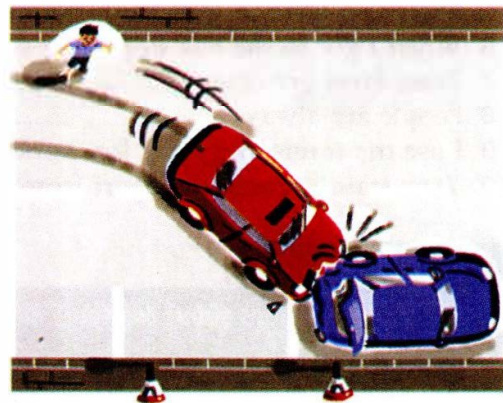
³ the place where pedestrians walk

⁴ coming closer

⁵ put his foot on the **brake** to stop the car

⁶ changed direction suddenly and without control

⁷ a car next to the pavement, not moving



Language help

You **damage** a thing [harm or break it] but **injure** a person [hurt them]. The related nouns are **damage** and **injury**, e.g. *There was a lot of damage to the bike, but the cyclist only had minor injuries.*

Exercises

30.1 Which words are being defined?

- 1 part of a road that is separated from other parts by a line *lane*.....
- 2 people who are walking
- 3 the place where people usually walk
- 4 the place where people can cross the road
- 5 the place where two roads meet
- 6 the thing you put your foot on to stop a car
- 7 a message or symbol beside the road that gives information

30.2 Complete the information for these road signs.

			
1 50 mph <i>speed</i> limit	3	5 end of	7 a in the road
			
2 there is only one	4 no	6 low	8

30.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 I asked him how to get to the bank. | I asked him the <i>way</i> to the bank. |
| 2 I didn't know where I was in the town centre. | I got in the town centre. |
| 3 You can ask someone to tell you how to get here. | You can ask someone to you. |
| 4 I went through Ledbury to get to Malvern. | I went to Malvern Ledbury. |
| 5 I was going to the station. | I was on my to the station. |
| 6 We arrived unexpectedly by the river. | We up by the river. |
| 7 I turned left instead of right. | I took the wrong |

30.4 Complete the text.

I was on the ¹ *main*..... road into town today and I saw an ².....
I was ³..... a roundabout when the guy behind tried to ⁴.....
me and the driver in front of me. He was driving too fast – over the ⁵.....
limit – and he lost control of the car. He had to ⁶..... to avoid a car on the
other side of the road, and in the end he ⁷..... into a tree. The car was badly
⁸....., but to my surprise, the man got out of the car with no ⁹.....
at all.

30.5

Over to you

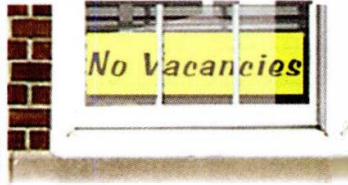
Answer the questions about your own country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
- 2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
- 3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings? If not, why not?
- 4 Do many people park their cars on the pavements? Why? / Why not?

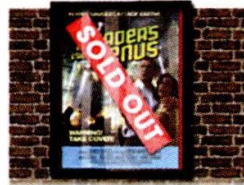
A Notices



on a machine that is not working, e.g. vending machine (above)



in the window of a hotel; the hotel is full

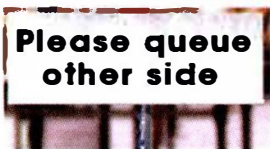


outside a theatre; all the tickets have been sold



outside a museum; you can go in free

B Do this!



wait in a line on the other side of this notice, e.g. in a bank or post office



stay on the right side, e.g. on the underground



do not walk on the grass



be quiet, an exam is happening now

C Don't do this!



you cannot leave your car here



you cannot go in here



you cannot go out here



on a hotel door; leave me to sleep



don't put a bag down and walk away



do not give food to the animals

D Warnings*



Take care you don't hit your head on a low door.



Be careful. There's a step.



be careful, this parcel will break easily

*something that tells you that something bad may happen

Exercises

31.1 Complete these notices and warnings. More than one answer may be possible.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 NO PARKING | 7 PLEASE QUEUE |
| 2 MIND THE | 8 MIND YOUR |
| 3 ADMISSION | 9 PLEASE DO NOT |
| 4 OUT OF | 10 KEEP OFF |
| 5 NO | 11 KEEP |
| 6 DO NOT | 12 SILENCE EXAMINATION |

31.2 Where could you see these notices or warnings?



1 On a door in a public building.



4



6



2



5



7



3

31.3 What notice could you see in each of these places?

- 1 on the underground
- 2 in a waiting area in a busy airport
- 3 on the door of a hotel room at 9 am
- 4 in front of garage doors
- 5 above the window of a train
- 6 on a door going into a low room
- 7 outside a museum or art gallery
- 8 outside a room where students are doing an exam

Keep right

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

31.4 Write down five more notices from the opposite page that you could see in a school or college.

Mind your head

.....

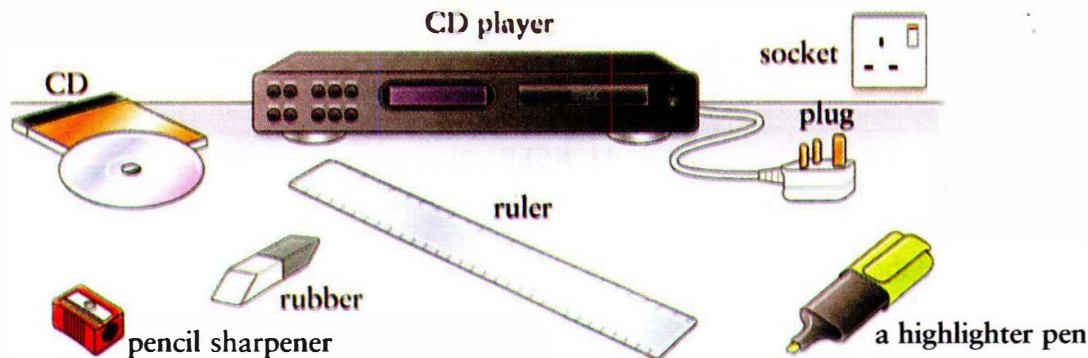
.....

31.5

Over to you

Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language? Try to find four more notices in the next week.

A Equipment and uses



You use a rubber to **rub something out**, e.g. writing.
You use a ruler to measure something.

You use a pencil sharpener to sharpen pencils.
You use a highlighter pen to highlight a word.

B Classroom activities

Teachers or students do these things in the classroom.

look up a word in a dictionary [find the meaning of a word]

borrow someone's dictionary or rubber [use it and then return it]

plug in the CD player [put the **plug** in the electric socket]

turn up the volume on the CD player [increase the volume; make it louder; *opp* turn (it) down]

correct students' English [give the correct English if students make mistakes]

Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

If you **lend** someone something, you give it to them for a period of time; if you **borrow** something from someone, you get it from them.

Could you lend me your pen? means the same as *Could I borrow your pen?*

Teachers may ask students to do these things in the classroom.

I'd like you to work with a **partner**. [someone else, i.e. another student]

Henrique, could you **swap places** with Lorena? [change seats / sit in each other's seats]

Kim, could you **share** your book with Petra? [use it together at the same time]

Repeat this sentence after me. [say it again]

C Questions about vocabulary

Q: What does *tiny* mean?

A: It means 'very small'.

Q: How do you pronounce *weight*?

A: It's pronounced /weɪt/, like *wait*.

Q: How do you spell *bicycle*?

A: B-I-C-Y-C-L-E.

Q: How do you use the word *wow*?

A: We use it to show that we think something is fantastic or surprising, e.g. **Wow**, look at that car.

Q: Could you explain the difference between *lend* and *give*?

A: If you lend something to someone, they have to give it back. If you give something to them, they can keep it.

Language help

www.irLanguage.com

verb	noun	verb	noun
mean	meaning	spell	spelling
pronounce	pronunciation	explain	explanation
repeat	repetition	use	use

Exercises

32.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1 explain | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a places |
| 2 look up | <input type="checkbox"/> | b a mistake |
| 3 sharpen | <input type="checkbox"/> | c a word |
| 4 swap | <input type="checkbox"/> | d with a partner |
| 5 plug in | <input type="checkbox"/> | e a dictionary |
| 6 work | <input type="checkbox"/> | f the CD player |
| 7 borrow | <input type="checkbox"/> | g the meaning |
| 8 correct | <input type="checkbox"/> | h a pencil |

32.2 Answer the questions.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1 What do you put in a CD player? | a CD |
| 2 What do you use a dictionary for? | ..... |
| 3 What do you put in a socket? | ..... |
| 4 What do you use a rubber for? | ..... |
| 5 Why do you share a book? | ..... |
| 6 What do you use a highlighter pen for? | ..... |
| 7 What do you use a pencil sharpener for? | ..... |
| 8 What do you use a ruler for? | ..... |

32.3 Here are some answers about *swap*. Write the questions.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 A: <u>What does 'swap' mean?</u> | B: It means to change something for something else. |
| 2 A: | B: Like shop or stop. |
| 3 A: | B: S-W-A-P. |
| 4 A: | B: You could say: <i>I can't see the board from here. Could you swap places with me?</i> |

32.4 Read the sentences on the left, then write a suitable request on the right.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 You want to look up a word. | Could I <u>borrow your dictionary?</u> |
| 2 You can't hear the CD player. | Could you |
| 3 You need to borrow a dictionary. | Could you |
| 4 You didn't hear what the teacher said. | Could you |
| 5 You want to know the difference between <i>lend</i> and <i>borrow</i> . | Could you |
| 6 You need to use someone's ruler. | Could I |
| 7 You want to sit in someone else's seat. | Could we |

32.5

Over to you

Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things:

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| use a highlighter pen? | share a book with anyone? | use a rubber? |
| look up any words? | borrow anything? | lend someone a pencil? |
| swap places with anyone? | use a ruler? | |

33 School education

A The school system

This is the system for state education in most parts of England and Wales. State schools are free and operated by the country. Parents pay to send their children to private schools.

age	education
3	Almost all children attend [go to; <i>fml</i>] nursery school for up to 15 hours a week.
5	Everyone starts primary school.
11	Pupils [students at school] go to secondary school.
16	Pupils take/do GCSE exams, in up to ten subjects. Then they can leave school and get a job, or go to a college for vocational [job] training, e.g. hotel management or travel and tourism courses, or they can stay at school for two more years.
18	Pupils take 'A' level exams in three or four subjects, and then they can leave school and get a job or go on to university [continue their education at university], or go to a college for further education/training, e.g. teaching or business studies.

B The school timetable

The school day is divided into about 5–7 lessons, and over the course of a week, most pupils do/study about ten subjects, including English, maths, history, science, etc. There's usually a one-hour lunch break [period of rest between work], and a break in the morning and afternoon as well.

Language help

In American English the subject is **math**, but in British English it is **maths**.

The school year is usually divided into three terms [periods of study], with each term being about 13 weeks, although some schools are now having shorter terms and more frequent holidays. At the end of the school year, pupils usually take/do exams before they break up [end classes for the term]. After the summer holidays, they go back [return] for the new school year.

C School rules*

“In the past schools generally had more rules, and if you broke the rules¹, you were punished. At my school, for example, pupils sometimes had to stay behind² and write an essay. I used to get into trouble³ for wearing lipstick.

I remember we had to call the male teachers 'sir' and female teachers 'miss', and we had to wear a horrible uniform⁴. Nowadays, the atmosphere⁵ is more relaxed⁶: older pupils can often dress⁷ the way they want – as long as they're reasonably smart⁸ – and the teachers are not as strict⁹.”

* instructions telling you what you must or must not do

¹ did something wrong

² stay in a place when others leave

³ do something wrong and be punished

⁴ special clothes

⁵ the feeling in a place or situation

⁶ comfortable and informal

⁷ wear clothes

⁸ well dressed and not too casual

⁹ A strict teacher punishes pupils who do something wrong.



lipstick

Exercises

33.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | | |
|---------|--------------------------|---|----------------|
| 1 go | <input type="checkbox"/> | e | a the rules |
| 2 leave | <input type="checkbox"/> | | b a uniform |
| 3 take | <input type="checkbox"/> | | c into trouble |
| 4 wear | <input type="checkbox"/> | | d at school |
| 5 study | <input type="checkbox"/> | | e to school |
| 6 stay | <input type="checkbox"/> | | f school |
| 7 get | <input type="checkbox"/> | | g an exam |
| 8 break | <input type="checkbox"/> | | h a subject |

33.2 Complete the sentences about state schools in England.

- When they're three, children can go to *nursery*..... school.
- At the age of five they go to school.
- At the age of eleven they go to school.
- When they're sixteen they exams, and afterwards they can school if they want.
- Many pupils at school for another two years and do 'A' levels.
- Nowadays, a lot of pupils to university after they leave school.

33.3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- We *take / do* exams in the summer. *Both* are correct.
- The school *timetable / schedule* is more or less the same every day.
- The day is divided *into / out of* seven lessons.
- The pupils *do / study* about ten subjects.
- There is usually a *rest / break* three times a day.
- Schools often *break out / break up* after they finish exams.
- After pupils leave school, many of them *take / get* a job.
- Pupils can *wear / dress* the way they want.

33.4 Complete the sentences.

- There were three *terms*..... in the school year.
- I had to a uniform.
- I had to call the teachers 'sir' and teachers 'miss'.
- I occasionally got into at school for doing things I shouldn't do.
- The teachers at my school were strict, and they pupils who broke the rules.
- My school had a really nice, relaxed

33.5

Over to you مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions about the education system in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Do you have state schools and private schools?
- Do all children have nursery education?
- When do children go to primary school and secondary school?
- Do all schools have the same terms?
- When can children leave school?
- Do pupils normally have to wear a uniform, or can they wear what they want?
- Are teachers usually quite strict?
- Is the atmosphere quite relaxed in most schools?

A How are they getting on?*

This is what Katya, an English teacher, thinks about some of her students.

“Ayumi has a wide **vocabulary** [knows a lot of words] and speaks very accurately [without mistakes], but she needs to practise her speaking more in order to become more **fluent** [able to speak naturally without stopping].”

“Cesar is quite fluent, but his **accent** [the way he pronounces words] is not very good. In particular, he has problems with certain **consonants**. [letters of the **alphabet** (a-z), which are not the vowels a, e, i, o, u]”

“Emre has no problem making himself **understood** [saying things in a way people understand], but he needs to **increase** his vocabulary [make it bigger], because at the moment it's quite **basic** [elementary; *syn* simple].”

“Olga is always **willing** to [happy and ready to] **experiment** with language [try something new to see what it is like]. For that reason she sometimes gets **things wrong** [makes mistakes], but she learns from her mistakes and she's making a lot of progress.”

“Andreas is a fantastic language learner. He picks things **up** [learns things without trying] very quickly, and he has a **good ear for language** [is good at hearing, repeating and understanding sounds and words].”

*What progress are they making?



Katya

Common mistakes

We use adjectives with nouns, and adverbs with verbs.

He's a **fluent** speaker. (NOT He's a ~~fluently~~ speaker.) She speaks **accurately**. (NOT She speaks ~~accurate~~.)

I need to speak English **well**. (NOT I need to speak English ~~good~~.)

B Examinations

Language help

You can **take** or **do** an exam (NOT ~~make~~ an exam). If you are successful and do well, you **pass**; if you are not successful and do badly, you **fail**. Before taking an exam, you **revise** for the exam [study / prepare for the exam]. Sometimes you can also **retake** an exam [do it again].

“My students are taking the Cambridge First Certificate exam in June, and for some of them it will be hard work¹. I think Cesar might fail, but he's doing his **best**², so with a bit of luck he might pass. I expect most of the others to pass. Andreas is a strong **candidate**³, and I'm sure he'll get a good **grade** (*syn* mark). I think Ayumi and Olga will also do well.

At the moment I'm trying to get **through**⁴ the coursebook so that we can do some **revision**⁵. I think the most important thing is to do some **exam preparation**⁶. Today I want the students to **do/write an essay**⁷. Most of them still find it difficult to write accurately, so I need to **work on** that with them.”

¹ work that requires a lot of effort

² making as much effort as he can; *syn* trying his best

³ someone who is taking an exam

⁴ finish

⁵ revise for the exam

⁶ getting ready for the exam

⁷ a short piece of writing about a particular subject

Exercises

34.1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 We *made* / *got* something wrong in the first question.
- 2 I had to *do* / *write* an essay.
- 3 My sister picks *up* / *out* languages very quickly.
- 4 I will have to *revise for* / *revise* my exam next week.
- 5 The students always *do* / *make* their best.
- 6 Tomas wants to *do* / *take* the exam in June.
- 7 Karin *failed* / *lost* the exam, but she can retake it next year.

34.2 Complete the sentences. The first letter has been given to help you.

- 1 There are twenty-six letters in the a**l**phabet.....
- 2 A+ is the highest g..... you can get.
- 3 There are over 100 c..... taking the exam.
- 4 We had to write an e..... for homework in not more than 200 words.
- 5 I need to w..... on my grammar; it's not very good.
- 6 I need to i..... my vocabulary; it's still very b.....
- 7 A and E are v.....; B, C and D are c.....
- 8 Studying for my exam is h..... w....., but it will be worth the effort.
- 9 Our teacher was always w..... to help us with our exam preparation.

34.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 Can you retake the exam? | Can you do <u>the exam again</u> ? |
| 2 They will need to revise for the exam. | They will need to do some |
| 3 I will work as hard as I can. | I will do |
| 4 We need to prepare for the exam. | We need to do some |
| 5 I make mistakes. | I get |
| 6 I can listen and repeat things accurately. | I have a good |

34.4 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Do you think Hiroko will do well?
B: Yes, I'm sure she'll pass..... the exam.
- 2 A: Is her pronunciation good?
B: No, she has quite a strong
- 3 A: Can she speak naturally without stopping?
B: Yes, she's quite
- 4 A: And does she make many mistakes?
B: No, she's quite when she speaks.
- 5 A: Does he know a lot of English?
B: No, but he can make himself
- 6 A: Will you finish the book?
B: Yeah, we should get it.
- 7 A: Did Amy do in her exam?
B: Yes, she got 80%.

34.5

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

Do you think you ...

... can make yourself understood?

... have a strong accent?

... are quite accurate?

... are quite fluent?

... have a wide vocabulary?

... have a good ear for language?

... pick things up quickly?

... often experiment with new language?

A Subjects

You can **do/study** these subjects at university but not always at school.

medicine (to become a doctor)

engineering (to become an engineer)

economics (to become an economist)

business studies (to become a **businessman/woman** and go into business)

law (to become a lawyer)

architecture (to become an architect)

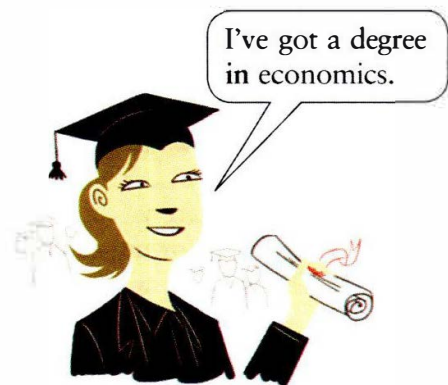
psychology (to become a psychologist)

www.irLanguage.com

B Studying at university

Some students go to university because they enjoy studying, others just want a **qualification**¹. First, however, you have to get good grades in your final school exams to get a place at many universities. You can then **study for / do a degree**². If you complete the course **successfully**, you get your **degree**³ and receive a **certificate**⁴. In the UK, most degree courses **last**⁵ three years, although some take longer, e.g. medicine or law.

Teachers at university are usually called **lecturers**, and most of the teaching is done through **lectures**⁶. The most senior lecturers have the title **Professor**. Students doing arts subjects, e.g. English or history, will spend time working in the **library** and writing **essays**⁷. Students doing science degrees, e.g. physics or chemistry, will probably spend a lot of their time working in a **laboratory** (*infrm* lab).



library



laboratory (lab)

¹ something that you get when you are successful in an exam

² do a course at university

³ (also the word for) a university qualification

⁴ a document that shows you have completed a course successfully

⁵ continue for

⁶ the lecturer talks and the students listen

⁷ short pieces of writing on a particular subject

Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

noun	verb	adjective
qualification	qualify	qualified
success	succeed (in sth / in doing sth)	(un)successful

C Postgraduate degrees

When students are doing their first degree, they are called **undergraduates**. When they complete their degree, they are **graduates**. Some graduates **go on to do** [do something in the future] a **Master's**, e.g. in the UK an MA (Master of Arts) or MSc (Master of Science). These are called **postgraduate degrees**. The longest one is a **PhD** (Doctor of Philosophy) where students do **research** [make a detailed study of one particular subject] for at least three years.

Exercises

35.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 To become a psychologist you need to study psychology.
- 2 To become an engineer you need to study
- 3 To become a doctor you need to study
- 4 To become an economist you need to study
- 5 To become a lawyer you need to study
- 6 To become an architect you need to study

35.2 Put the sentences in the correct order.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| I did a degree course. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I passed with good grades. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I got a Master's. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I did a postgraduate course. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I did my final exams at school. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I became an undergraduate. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I got a place at university. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I got a degree in business studies. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

35.3 Are the sentences about English universities true or false? If a sentence is false, correct it.

- 1 The teachers are all called professors. False. Most teachers are called lecturers.
- 2 Anyone can go to university if they want to.
- 3 Some students go to university just to get a qualification.
- 4 Most university degree courses in the UK last two years.
- 5 Students go to lectures at university.
- 6 If you are unsuccessful, you get a degree.
- 7 Students studying for their first degree are called graduates.
- 8 Science students have to write a lot of essays.
- 9 A PhD is a postgraduate degree.
- 10 If you study arts subjects, you work in a laboratory.

35.4 Complete the text.

Stephen got very good ¹ grades in his final school exams, and he went to university and got a ² in economics. He then ³ to do an MSc. The course ⁴ a year, and at the end of it, he had an offer to go ⁵ business with a friend. After two years though, he decided to go back to university to do ⁶ for a PhD. He knows it will be three years' work without much money, but he loves studying, and never went to university just for a ⁷ that would get him a good job earning a lot of money.

35.5

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you need to pass exams before you can go to university in your country?
- 2 How long do most degree courses last?
- 3 In England the first degree is called a BA or BSc. What are they called in your country?
- 4 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?
- 5 Do you get a certificate when you finish your degree?

36 Jobs

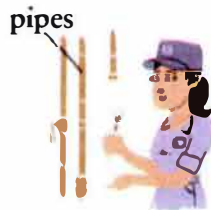
A Working with your hands



builder
[builds or repairs homes]



carpenter
[makes things using wood]



plumber
[installs and repairs water pipes, etc.]



electrician
[installs and repairs electrical things, e.g. lights]



mechanic
[repairs cars when there is a problem]

Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

When something is damaged or broken, we often use **repair** or **fix**.

*Dad **repaired/fix**ed the window for me.*

*I need someone to **fix/repair** the computer.*

With small pieces of equipment we can also use **mend**; with clothes we often use **mend**.

*Could you **fix/repair/mend** my watch?*

*I've **mended** your trousers for you.*

B Professions*

job	what he/she does	www.irLanguage.com
architect	designs buildings	
lawyer	represents people with legal problems	
engineer	plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.	
accountant	controls the financial situation of people and companies	
university lecturer	teaches in a university, e.g. gives lectures	

* jobs that need a lot of training and/or education

C The medical profession

These people **treat** people or animals. [give medicine or medical help]

GPs [general practitioners: doctors who don't work in a hospital], dentists [people who look after your teeth] and vets [animal doctors] all work in a place called a **surgey**. In hospital there are nurses who look after people, and **surgeons** who **operate** on people [open the body to remove or repair a part that is damaged].

D The armed forces and the emergency services

My son joined the army when he was 18. [became a member of]



gun

soldier
(in the army)

sailor
(in the navy)

pilot
(in the air force)

police officer
(in the police force)

fireman/ firefighter
(in the fire brigade)

Exercises

36.1 Match the job on the left with something the person uses on the right.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 lecturer | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a a gun |
| 2 plumber | <input type="checkbox"/> | b wood |
| 3 accountant | <input type="checkbox"/> | c books |
| 4 builder | <input type="checkbox"/> | d pipes |
| 5 soldier | <input type="checkbox"/> | e bricks |
| 6 carpenter | <input type="checkbox"/> | f numbers |

36.2 Write down *one* job from the opposite page that would be difficult for the person in 1–6, and *three* jobs that would be difficult for the person in 7–9.

- Someone who didn't go to university. dentist
- Someone who is always sick on a boat.
- Someone who is not interested in cars.
- Someone who is afraid of dogs.
- Someone who is afraid of heights and high places.
- Someone who is terrible at numbers and maths.
- Someone who isn't good at working with their hands.
- Someone who cannot see very well.
- Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends.

36.3 Test your knowledge. Can you write down what these people do without looking at the opposite page?

- A university lecturer teaches university students
- A vet
- An architect
- An electrician
- A lawyer
- A surgeon
- A mechanic
- A dentist
- An engineer

36.4 Complete the dialogues.

- A: She's a police officer.
B: Really? When did she join the police force?
- A: He's a sailor.
B:
- A: He's a fighter pilot.
B:
- A: She's a soldier.
B:
- A: He's a firefighter.
B:

36.5

Over to you

Write a list of friends, relatives or neighbours who have jobs. What does each person do?

37 Talking about your work

A What do you do?

People can ask what job you do in different ways; you can answer in different ways.

A: What do you do?

A: What's your job?

A: What do you do for a living?

B: I'm a doctor/
hairdresser, etc.

B: I work in sales /
marketing / a bank, etc.

B: I work for Union Bank /
Fiat / Sony, etc.

B What does that involve?*

James and Emma are business consultants [people who help others in a particular area]. Their work involves advising people who want to set up [start] a business, especially in health and fitness. James deals with the marketing [does the work in marketing; *syn* handle], while Emma is responsible for [in control of; *syn* in charge of] products [things that people make/produce] such as towels, equipment, beauty products, etc.

Common mistakes

I have a lot of work to do. (NOT I have a lot of ~~works~~ to do.)

She **advises** me. (NOT She ~~advices~~ me.) BUT She gives me **advice**. (NOT She gives me ~~advise~~.)

My job involves a lot of travel. OR My job involves travelling. (NOT My job involves ~~to travel~~.)

Amy is a manager in a veterinary surgery. She **runs** [organises or controls] the day-to-day [happening every day] business of the surgery and is in charge of a small team: three receptionists, an accounts manager and a secretary. Her work involves a lot of **admin** [short for administration] such as buying food, medicine and equipment; she also handles any complaints that customers make [when customers **complain** / say that something is wrong or is not satisfactory].

* What do you have to do exactly?

C Pay

Most workers are paid [receive money] every month; this is called a salary. Your income is the total amount of money you receive in a year. This might be money from one job; it might be money from two jobs. We can express this in different ways:

My income is about £25,000. OR I **earn/make** about £25,000 a year [every year].

Some of that income you can keep, but some goes to the government; in the UK this is called income tax, e.g. *I lose 20% of my income in income tax.*

Language help

A **salary** is money paid to professional people, e.g. doctors or teachers, and to office workers for the work they do, and is usually paid into a person's bank account every month. **Wages** are usually paid for each hour/day/week of work to people who do more physical jobs, e.g. building or cleaning.

D Conditions*

Most people work **fixed** hours [always the same], e.g. 9 am to 5.30 pm. We often call this a **nine-to-five** job. Other people have to do/work **overtime** [work extra hours]. Some people get paid for overtime; others don't. Some people have good working conditions, e.g. nice offices, paid holidays, extra time off [not at work] for a new mother and father when a baby is born, etc. There is also a **minimum** wage [an amount of money workers receive, and employers cannot pay less than this].

* the situation in which people work or live

Exercises

37.1 Tick (✓) the words which are directly connected with *money*.

pay ✓	earn	handle	wages
salary	income	consult	product

37.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 set up	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	a clients
2 in charge	<input type="checkbox"/>	b a company
3 deal	<input type="checkbox"/>	c overtime
4 earn	<input type="checkbox"/>	d with complaints
5 do	<input type="checkbox"/>	e of a small department
6 advise	<input type="checkbox"/>	f money

37.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

1 What do you do?	What's <u>your job</u> ?
2 I'm a marketing assistant.	I work
3 I'm employed by the government.	I work
4 I earn £22,000 a year from my two jobs.	My
5 What do you have to do exactly?	What does your job
6 I'm responsible for the reception area.	I'm in
7 What's your job?	What do you do for
8 I have to read government reports.	My job involves
9 I advise clients.	I give
10 I complained about the service.	I made

37.4 Complete the texts. Put one word in each gap.

Alexander Carpenter works ¹ *in* sales, and he's a regional manager. He ² the north-west region and he's ³ for a small team of five other sales people. His job ⁴ a lot of travelling within the region, and he's in contact with his team on a day-to- ⁵ basis. It's not a nine-to- ⁶ job: Alexander has to do a lot of ⁷ Fortunately he can ⁸ a lot more money by doing this, and his working ⁹ are quite good. After income ¹⁰ he makes £60,000 ¹¹ year. Recently his wife had a baby, but the company gave him extra time ¹² to be with her after the birth.

Kelly Bradbury is a financial adviser for a bank. She specialises in mortgages, which means that she ¹³ people who want to buy a flat or a house. At the moment Kelly spends a lot of her time ¹⁴ with young people who are trying to buy a property for the first time, which is not easy. She works ¹⁵ hours – 9 am to 5 pm – and she doesn't have to ¹⁶ overtime.

37.5

Over to you

Answer the questions about working conditions in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
- 2 How much income tax do most people pay? (e.g. 10% or 20% of what they earn)
- 3 Do male and female workers normally get time off if they have a baby? If so, how much?
- 4 Is there a minimum wage? If so, do you know what it is?

A Getting a job*

“When I left school, I applied for¹ jobs in different companies, and finally, after sending out lots of CVs² and having some interviews³, a small company employed me⁴. I didn't earn a lot, but the company gave me some training⁵, which was good.”

* finding a job

¹ wrote a letter of application for

² a document which describes your education and the jobs you have done

³ a meeting where someone asks you questions to see if you are suitable for a job

⁴ gave me a job

⁵ help and advice to learn how to do a job or activity

Common mistakes

I had some training. (NOT I had ~~a~~ training.) You can also go on / do a training course [a period of organised help and advice, often in a different place] (NOT formation or stage).

B Promotion

“I worked hard and soon I was promoted [given a better job with more responsibility]. They also gave me a good pay rise [more money]. It was really good experience [knowledge you get from doing something such as a job], and when my boss left the company a few years later, they gave me an important promotion [a move to a higher job in the company].”

C Resignation*

“By my mid-twenties, I was getting a bit bored, and decided I wanted to work abroad [in another country]. So, I quit my job [told the company I was leaving; *syn* resign] and started looking for jobs in the UK. After a couple of months I got a job in London. At first I liked it, but ...”

* when you say officially you are leaving a job

D Unemployment*

“After six months, I got fed up with the job – and I think I was enjoying myself too much to work very hard. Finally, the company sacked me [told me to leave the company; *syn* gave me the sack], and after that I was unemployed [without a job; *syn* out of work] for two months. Finally I got a part-time job [working only part of the day or week; *opp* full-time job] in the kitchen of a restaurant.”

* when people do not have a job

Common mistakes

Claudio didn't have a job. (NOT He didn't have ~~a~~ work.)

E Success and retirement*



Claudio

“I loved the restaurant. I learned how to cook, and two years later I became manager. Three years after that I opened my own restaurant [belonging to me / it was my restaurant]. It was very successful [it did well and made money], and twenty years later, I owned five restaurants, and I was the owner of two hotels. I believe anyone can succeed [be successful] if they work hard enough – and have a little bit of luck. Last year, aged fifty, I retired and went back to Italy.”

* the time when people stop work, often at 60 or 65

Exercises

38.1 Match the answers on the right with the questions on the left.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 Why did they sack him? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a Because he was 65. |
| 2 Why did they promote him? | <input type="checkbox"/> | b Because he needed more training. |
| 3 Why did he apply for the job? | <input type="checkbox"/> | c Because he was late for work every day. |
| 4 Why did he retire? | <input type="checkbox"/> | d Because he was out of work. |
| 5 Why did he quit his job? | <input type="checkbox"/> | e Because he was the best person in the department. |
| 6 Why did he go on the course? | <input type="checkbox"/> | f Because he didn't like his boss. |

38.2 Complete the table.

verb	noun	adjective
employ	(un)employment	
promote		
retire		
resign		
	success	
own		

38.3 Complete the sentences.

- Lucy is hoping to *get* a job in a travel agency when she leaves school.
- I decided to work to see what life was like in another country.
- I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work
- She her job when her boss refused to give her a pay
- I didn't earn much money in the job, but it was still good because the company sent me on several training
- After they sacked me, I was out of for six months.
- It's not easy to in business; you need ability and luck.
- I think you should definitely for that job.
- Brett was terrible as a tour guide; that's why they gave him the
- I've worked for other people most of my life, but I'd really like to run my company.
- I used to a company but it wasn't a ; I lost a lot of money.
- If she's interested in that job, she'll have to write a letter of

38.4

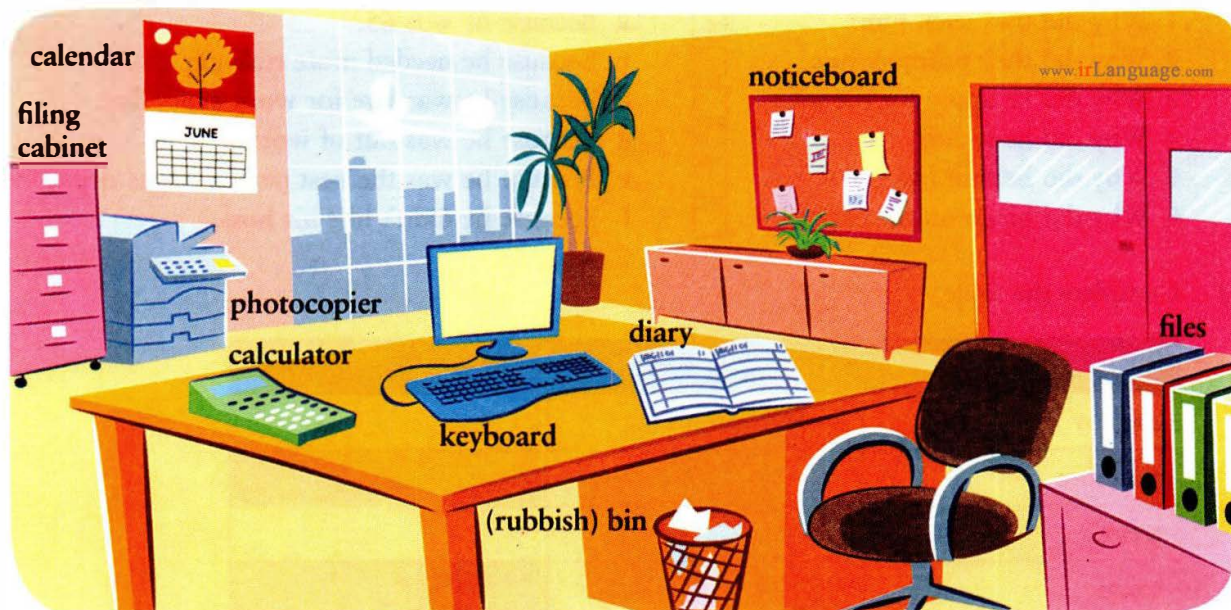
Over to you

If you have a job, answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- Have you been promoted since you started working at your present company?
- Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
- Have you been on many training courses since you started work?
- Would you like to go on more training courses in the future?
- Have you ever resigned from a job, or been given the sack?

39 Working in an office

A Office equipment



B Office work

Josh works for a company which produces¹ furniture. He doesn't work in the factory where the furniture is produced, but in the offices across the road.

His job involves² quite a lot of paperwork³. He types⁴ letters to different companies, sends out invoices⁵ to customers and sends emails.

He also has to arrange⁶ visits to other companies, make appointments⁷ for his boss, and sometimes he shows visitors round the factory. Occasionally he has to attend⁸ meetings with his boss, but one of Josh's most important tasks is to organise⁹ the office party every year.

¹ makes

² includes doing

³ work that uses paper, e.g. reports, forms

⁴ writes using a keyboard

⁵ documents showing how much the customer has to pay

⁶ plan and prepare

⁷ arrange a time when you meet someone

⁸ go to; *fml*

⁹ plan and arrange

Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

verb	noun	verb	noun
arrange	arrangement	attend	attendance
organise	organisation	produce	production

C Office problems

Josh is having a bad day today. The photocopier has broken down¹, the computer isn't working and the printer has run out of² paper. On top of that, two of his colleagues³ are absent⁴, just when there is loads of⁵ work to do.

¹ stopped working

² has no more

³ people you work with

⁴ not in the office; *syn off*

⁵ lots of; *infml*

Exercises

39.1 Finish the noun in each sentence.

- I've just got myself a new *key board*.....
- I threw all that stuff in the *rubbish*
- He put most of the stuff in the *filig*
- It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general *paper*.....
- I told him to put the details on the *notice*.....

39.2 Which words are being defined?

- The place where you throw away paper you don't want. *bin*.....
- People you work with.
- Something you put on a wall which tells you the date.
- A book where you write down appointments and things you have to do.
- A piece of paper which shows a customer what they have bought and what they must pay.
- An electronic device that helps you to add up numbers and do maths.
- An informal word meaning 'lots'.

39.3 Complete the dialogues.

- A: What does the company do?
 B: It *produces*..... electronic equipment.
- A: I've to see the bank manager on Friday, but I think I'm going to be away.
 B: OK. Do you want me to make another for you?
 A: Yes, please. That would be great. Next Thursday or Friday, if possible.
- A: Why can't we use the printer?
 B: It's of ink.
- A: Do you have to meetings?
 B: Yes, sometimes, if my boss is away and he can't go.
- A: We've got some visitors coming tomorrow.
 B: Right. Would you like me to them the factory?
- A: What does your work ?
 B: Basically, I have to people's travel arrangements and hotel accommodation.

39.4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 My boss isn't here today. OFF | My boss <i>is off today</i> |
| 2 The photocopier is broken. WORK | The photocopier |
| 3 We're very busy today. LOADS | We |
| 4 I have to go to a meeting. ATTEND | I have to |
| 5 We don't have any more paper. RUN OUT | We |
| 6 Why isn't he here this morning? ABSENT | Why |

39.5

Over to you www.irLanguage.com

Have you got a job? If so, are these statements true for you? If you haven't got a job, answer for someone you know.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| I do lots of paperwork. | I attend meetings. | I send loads of emails. |
| I organise events. | I type letters. | I show people round. |
| I use a photocopier. | I send invoices. | I repair things that break down. |

A

A successful business


This is the story of a company that has **achieved a great deal** [a lot] in a short period of time.


Language help

If you **achieve** something, you have been successful in something that needed a lot of work and effort. The noun is **achievement**, e.g. *Writing a book has been my greatest achievement.*

DENHAM FARM BAKERY

DENHAM FARM BAKERY¹ is a family business, with three different **generations** (father, son and granddaughter) of the family **currently**² working with a team of 90 **employees**. The company **was set up**³ in 1991 with the **aim**⁴ of producing a **variety**⁵ of bread of the highest **quality**⁶. The Denham family saw there was a **growing demand**⁷ for organic products in the 1990s, and they soon became **experts**⁸ in the field of organic bread-making. The company is **run**⁹ from a factory in Ilminster, where the bread is baked **daily**¹⁰ and then **delivered**¹¹ to shops across the south-west of England. The **firm**¹² has **expanded**¹³ a great deal in the last 20 years, but it still remains a family business.





¹ place where bread and cakes are made or sold

² now, at the moment (NOT **actually**)

³ started (used about a company or organisation)

⁴ a plan of what you hope to achieve

⁵ different types

⁶ how good or bad something is

⁷ when more people want to buy something

⁸ people with skill/knowledge in something

⁹ organised and controlled

¹⁰ every day

¹¹ taken (to shops)

¹² company or business

¹³ become bigger

B

A view of a company

Morgan & Stenson are a firm of **accountants**¹. They were **formerly**² Stenson & Son, but were **taken over**³ by JS Morgan five years ago. James Morgan **took up** the **position**⁴ of senior partner, and the company changed its name to Morgan & Stenson. The **headquarters**⁵ of the firm are in Newcastle, but they have five other **branches**⁶ in different parts of the north-east of England.

James Morgan is a **former** owner of a football club, with many **contacts**⁷ in the football world, so many of his **clients**⁸ are footballers.

Last year the company **attracted** a lot of **attention**⁹ when it became the first firm of accountants to advertise on local TV and radio. At the time, James Morgan said it was his **ambition**¹⁰ to change the **image**¹¹ that people have of accountants.

¹ people who control a person or company's money

² in the past but not now

³ JS Morgan got control of Stenson & Son

⁴ started in the job

⁵ the place where the main office is

⁶ offices that are part of the company

⁷ people you know

⁸ people who pay someone for a service

⁹ caused people to notice it

¹⁰ something someone wants to achieve

¹¹ the way that people think of them

Language help

We usually talk about an **ex-wife/boyfriend**, etc., but a **former** president/career/banker, etc. Shops and organisations have **customers**; lawyers, accountants, etc. have **clients**. We **take up** a job or activity, but we **set up** a company.

Exercises

40.1 Tick (✓) the words which refer to people.

headquarters	employee ✓	branches	expert	bakery
accountant	quality	client	contacts	variety

40.2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.

- The food is delivered every day. *daily*.....
- There is a real need for food of this quality.
- Our plan is to open another branch.
- The company is doing well.
- We have 25 workers.
- I started the business ten years ago.
- Their main offices are in Sheffield.
- He's hoping for a position in the company.
- The firm is getting bigger.
- The company made a lot of money last year.

40.3 Choose the best word to complete the sentences.

- They're experts (in) / *on* farming.
- When did you *set up* / *take up* tennis?
- Her law firm has many famous *clients* / *customers*.
- She's actually my *ex-* / *former* wife; we got divorced last year.
- When did they *set up* / *take up* the company?
- The shop assistant was serving a *client* / *customer*.
- Marcel used to work here, but he's *currently* / *actually* working abroad.
- Are they planning to *take up* / *take over* the company?
- George Bush is a *former* / *an ex-* president of America.

40.4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 He makes different cakes. VARIETY | He <i>makes a variety of</i> cakes. |
| 2 They were very successful. ACHIEVE | They
..... |
| 3 I know a lot of people in banking. CONTACTS | I
..... |
| 4 They used to be called BMG. FORMERLY | They
..... |
| 5 I've always wanted to fly a plane. AMBITION | It's
..... |
| 6 She has a great knowledge of finance. EXPERT | She
..... |
| 7 People noticed the adverts. ATTRACT | The adverts
..... |

40.5 Complete the text.

Danielle Spinks set up her motorbike courier service (DCS) in 1979. If you wanted to send documents across London, Danielle promised to ¹ *deliver* them in less than one hour. It was only a small ², but DCS ³ immediate success, so Danielle set up another ⁴ of the company in Manchester, which was ⁵ by her brother, Darren. The business soon ⁶ rapidly, and it is now Danielle's ⁷ to have a branch of her courier service in every major city in England.

A Rise and fall

These verbs describe trends [movements] in sales [how much you sell], prices, etc.

When sales or prices rise / go up / increase, they can do it in different ways:

They can rise **slightly**. [a bit] →

They can rise **gradually**. [slowly over a long period] →

They can rise **sharply**. [quickly and by a large amount] ↗

The opposite can also happen. Prices or sales can **fall / go down / decrease** slightly, gradually or sharply. If prices don't rise *or* fall, they **stay the same**. →

We use certain prepositions to say by how much something rises or falls.

The price has risen **by** 10 pence. Sales fell **from** 8,000 units **to** 6,500 units.

Rise/increase and fall/decrease can also be used as nouns, with certain prepositions.

There's been a **gradual** rise in prices. We've seen a **slight** increase in profit.

There's been a **sharp** fall in sales. Profits were £5 million, which is a **decrease** of 10%.

Language help

مرجع زبان انگلیسی

Profit is the money you receive from your business after you have paid all your costs (*opp loss*).
Last year the company **made a profit** of €2 million but this year they could **make a loss**.

B Financial language

With the **economy**¹ now improving, banks are reporting positive **signs**² that the number of **loans**³ is increasing.

With **inflation**⁴ expected to rise, there are **growing fears**⁵ that **interest rates**⁶ could go up by as much as **2%**⁷ next year.

Figures⁸ published yesterday show that **trade**⁹ between the two countries has now risen for the fifth year **in a row**¹⁰.

Although the **value**¹¹ of the pound fell slightly against the dollar yesterday, the news that sales rose in the last **quarter**¹² has **raised**¹³ hopes that we may be coming out of **recession**¹⁴.

¹ the system by which a country's trade, industry and money are organised

² something which shows something is happening

³ money that you borrow

⁴ the rate at which prices increase

⁵ increasing worries

⁶ (see language help below)

⁷ this is spoken as *two per cent*

⁸ an amount shown in numbers, e.g. 500

⁹ buying and selling between countries

¹⁰ one after another with no break

¹¹ the money that something can be sold for

¹² (in business) a period of three months

¹³ increased; you can also **raise prices**

¹⁴ a time when the economy is not successful

Language help

www.irLanguage.com

Interest is what the bank **charges** you [asks you to pay] when you borrow money from them, and the **interest rate** is how much you must pay as a **percentage**, e.g. **5%**, **8%**, etc. So, if you borrow £100 for a year and the interest rate is 15% a year, you'll have to **pay back** £115.

Exercises

41.1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 We made a profit *of* for six million euros.
- 2 Sales rose *to / by* 10% last year.
- 3 The value of the shares fell *from / for* 240 pence to 225 pence.
- 4 There was a fall *of / from* 5% in the value of the shares.
- 5 There has been a gradual rise *with / in* profits.
- 6 The company made a loss two years *on / in* a row.
- 7 What's the current value *of / in* the euro?

41.2 Which words or phrases are being defined?

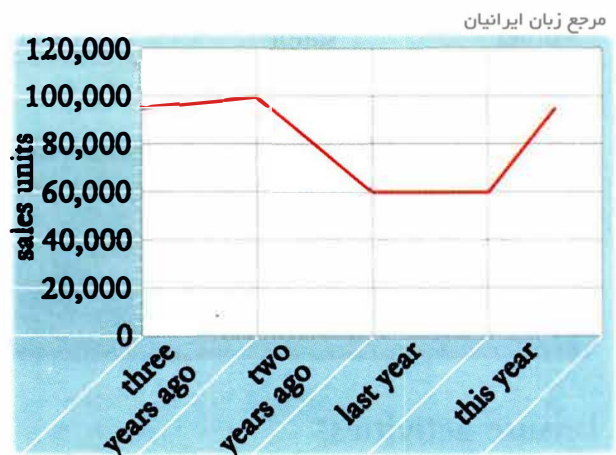
- 1 The amount of money that something can be sold for. *value*
- 2 Money you borrow from a bank for your business.
- 3 What the bank charges you when you borrow money.
- 4 The rate at which prices increase.
- 5 The money that a company receives for its goods after paying all the costs.
- 6 Buying and selling goods and services between countries.
- 7 A movement in sales, prices, etc. over a period of time.

41.3 Complete the two short texts, then answer each of the two questions.

- 1 If you get a bank of €500 for one year and the bank you 20%, how much will you have to to the bank at the end of the year?
- 2 If you take out a similar amount from another bank, and the interest is 15, how much will you at the end of the year?

41.4 Look at the graph and complete the text.

The ¹ graph shows sales
² for the last three and a
 half years. Three years ago sales
³ slightly and reached
 100,000 units by the end of the year.
 The company ⁴ a profit of
 almost £500,000 and decided to
⁵ the price from £8.95 to
 £10.25. It had an immediate effect: there
 was a ⁶ ⁷ in
 sales over the year. It was bad news, and the
 company made a ⁸
 And in the next year sales ⁹ the same. However, in the first two ¹⁰
 of this year, they have ¹¹ ¹² for the first
 time in many years.



41.5

Over to you

www.irLanguage.com

Can you answer these questions about your own country?

- 1 What is the inflation rate at the moment?
- 2 If you borrow money from the bank, what is the approximate interest rate you will be charged?
- 3 Do you think the economy is doing well or badly?
- 4 When was the last time your country was in recession?
- 5 What is the value of your currency against the dollar?

A Sports



sport	person	verb(s)	place
athletics	athlete	run, jump, throw, etc.	track (in a stadium)
motor racing	racing driver	drive/race	track
swimming	swimmer	swim/race	pool
boxing	boxer	box/fight	boxing ring
skiing	skier	ski	ski slopes
football	footballer	play	pitch (in a stadium)
ice hockey	ice hockey player	play	ice hockey rink
golf	golfer	play	golf course
basketball	basketball player	play	basketball court
sailing	sailor	sail	on the sea or a lake

Language help

We play sports such as football, ice hockey, tennis, golf and basketball.

I play football in the winter. I play basketball twice a week.

We use go with other sports and activities, especially those ending in *-ing*.

I go swimming in the lake during summer. We often go rock climbing in the mountains.

We use do with a lot of / a bit of + *-ing*.

I did a bit of sailing in the holidays. I don't do a lot of running these days.

B Leisure activities*

tent



camping



rock climbing



jogging



yoga



going to the gym

We often go camping in the summer, and we usually do a bit of rock climbing as well.

My best friend does a lot of yoga. She works out in the gym two or three times a week as well.

My brother enjoys jogging, and it keeps him fit. [helps his body to stay in good condition]

My mum does a bit of jogging as well – just for fun. [because she enjoys it; *syn* for pleasure]

I'm afraid I don't do any exercise at all.

* activities in your free time

Exercises

42.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

swimming	golfer	court	track	jump	pitch	net
motor racing	stick	basketball	athlete	box	skis	race
goalkeeper	racing driver	sail	rink	skiing	swimming costume	

sport	person	place	verb	equipment
swimming				

42.2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- We play football in the winter at my school.
- Do you much exercise?
- I basketball in the summer and winter.
- We always in the winter, as long as there is enough snow.
- I a bit of yoga when I was younger.
- We used to camping in the mountains.
- I a lot of swimming in the summer.
- If you want to fit, you need to run three or four miles every other day.
- I used to in the gym, but I'm getting a bit old for that now.

42.3 What is the sport and who is the person?



1 skiing
skier



2
.....



3
.....



4
.....



5
.....

42.4 Complete the last word in each sentence.

- Do you know the size of a boxing ring..... ?
- I used to play ice
- We played golf in Scotland, where they have some fantastic golf
- My dad plays golf. He's not a serious golfer; he just plays for
- If the girls go swimming, they must remember to take their swimming
- We watch a lot of motor
- I love swimming, and it helps to keep me
- My sister enjoys rock
- You can't go camping unless you have a
- Running is good exercise, so four or five times a week I go

42.5

Over to you

Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- What sport or leisure activities do you do? Why do you do it/them?
- What sport do you watch, and where?

43 Competitive sport

A Winning and losing

In football, you can talk about the score [the number of goals a team has] like this:

Spain played Poland and they won the game.

= Poland lost the game.

Spain won 2–0 (spoken as *two nil*).

= Poland lost 2–0.

Spain beat Poland (2–0). (NOT Spain ~~won~~ Poland.)

= Poland lost (2–0) to Spain.

Spain defeated Poland (2–0).

= Poland were defeated (2–0) by Spain.

Spain and Italy drew 1–1 (spoken as *one all*) OR It was a 1–1 draw between Spain and Italy.

Language help

The **score** at the end of a game is also the **result**.

The final score/result was 2–0. The score at half-time was 1–0. (NOT The ~~result~~ at half-time was 1–0.)

B Competitions

A **competition** is an organised event in which people try to win something by being the best, the fastest, etc. **Individuals**, such as tennis players Serena Williams or Rafael Nadal, and teams such as Manchester United, take part in [join with others in] different types of competition. Tennis players and golfers enter **tournaments** such as the French Open; football and ice hockey teams play in **league competitions**, where they play against different teams. Many teams also play in **cup competitions** (similar to tournaments), e.g. the FA Cup or the World Cup, which ends with two teams playing against each other in a **final**. The winners (*opp* the losers) are the **champions**, e.g. Spain became World Cup champions in 2010, and Iker Casillas received the cup as captain of the winning team.

C Reporting sports events

In one of the most **incredible races** of all time, Jamaican Usain Bolt ran a time of 9.69 seconds to win the Olympic 100 metres final, and **break** his own world **record**¹. It was an **outstanding** race, and Bolt was celebrating his **victory**² fifteen metres before he reached the finishing line.

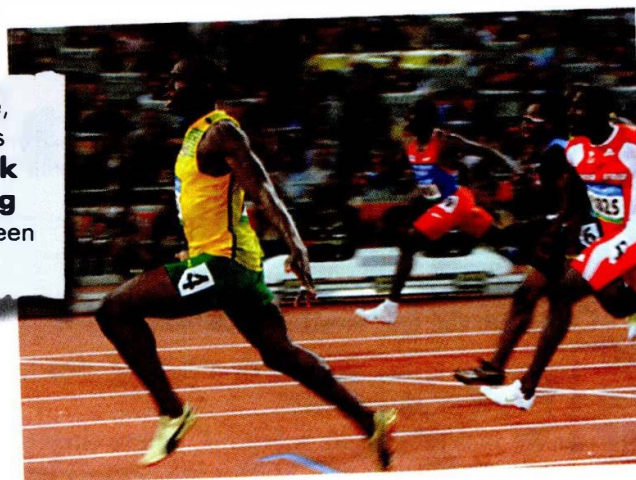
¹ run faster than anyone in the world before

² when you win a game/race; *opp* defeat

Kim Clijsters won the women's US Open last night for the second time. She first won the **championship**³ in 2005, but **gave up**⁴ tennis in 2007 to have a baby. She returned in 2009, and is the first mother to win a grand slam for 29 years.

³ an important competition to decide who is the best

⁴ stopped playing



There was a **superb** race for the Canadian Grand Prix. The **winner**⁵, Lewis Hamilton, passed Mark Webber with 20 laps of the race remaining and won by two seconds. He now **leads**⁶ the drivers championship with 109 points.

⁵ the person who wins

⁶ is in front of others during a competition, e.g. At half-time, Milan are leading 1–0.

Language help

Superb, **incredible** and **outstanding** can describe something or someone that is very good and of a very high quality, e.g. *Pelé was a **superb** footballer.*

Exercises

43.1 Complete the verb forms with the correct past tense and past participle.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 win / <u>won</u> / <u>have won</u> | 4 draw / / |
| 2 lose / / | 5 break / / |
| 3 beat / / | 6 give up / / |

43.2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

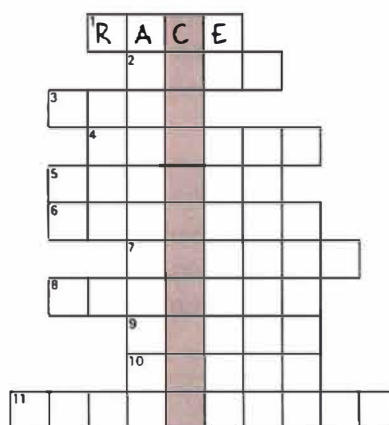
- It was a fantastic victory / *defeat* for the team.
- Lionel Messi was *outstanding* / *incredible* for Barcelona.
- At half-time in the game, the *score* / *result* is 1–0 to Arsenal.
- The French Open is a famous tennis *cup* / *tournament*.
- Croatia *beat* / *defeated* Germany 3–2.
- We *won* / *beat* the other team 4–1.
- The UEFA Cup is a great *competition* / *league*.

43.3 Complete the sentences.

- It was a good game but unfortunately we *lost* 3–2.
- The at half-time was 2–1, but the final was a draw.
- Holland England 2–1, so they are in the semi-final.
- Brazil 1–1 with Argentina last night.
- Venus Williams has won the Wimbledon at least five times.
- Carolina Klüft broke the heptathlon world again last night.
- There are 20 teams in the , and each team plays the other teams twice.
- Bradley Wiggins part in the *Tour de France* last year and finished fourth.
- I think Roger Federer is going to win. He's 5–2 in the final set.
- Argentina are playing Brazil next week.

43.4 Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

- competition in which people run, drive, etc.
- the opposite of *win*
- a group of people who play together
- a synonym for *outstanding*
- stop doing a regular activity
- the leader of a team
- someone who wins something
- when you win a competition
- the last part of a competition
- the opposite of *winner*
- a type of sports competition



43.5

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Have you ever taken part in a sports competition?
- Have you ever won anything?
- Have you ever been captain of a team?
- Have you ever come first, second or third in a race?
- Have you ever watched an individual or team in a final, at the game or on television?

A Books

“I used to hate literature¹ at school, but now I read a lot. I started off with fiction². I read hundreds of novels³, mostly thrillers⁴ and science fiction⁵. My favourite author⁶ is John le Carré.

Recently, I've started reading quite a lot of biographies⁷, and even some poetry⁸. Two of my favourite poets are Antonio Machado and Federico García Lorca. They both wrote poems in the early 20th century.”

¹ serious and important writing

² stories about imaginary people and events

³ fiction books

⁴ exciting stories, often about crime

⁵ stories about the future

⁶ someone who writes books

⁷ stories of a person's life, written by another person

⁸ pieces of creative writing in short lines

B Films

How do you decide which films you are going to see?

If it's a **horror film** [a film that makes people frightened, e.g. *Dracula*], I usually go and see it. I love horror films.

For me, the **film director** [the person who tells the actors what to do, e.g. Spielberg] is the most important thing. I always go and see the latest film [the newest, most recent] by directors I really like such as Pedro Almodóvar.

I look to see **what's on** [what films are being shown at the cinema], and go to anything that I **fancy seeing** [want to see; *informl*].

I'm not interested in films that are **serious or complicated** [difficult to understand]; I only go to the cinema for **entertainment** [things you see or do to enjoy yourself].

I like **comedies** [films that are funny] and especially **romantic comedies** [comedies that have a love story]. I'll go and see anything that Ashton Kutcher is in!

If a film gets **good reviews** [opinions in a newspaper or magazine], then I often go and see it.

If there's a **big star** [a famous actor] in it, then I am more likely to see it. I don't normally go and see films if I don't recognise the names of the actors [the people who are in films].

Language help

noun	person	verb
entertainment	entertainer	entertain
review	reviewer	review
acting	actor	act
directing	director	direct

Exercises

44.1 Find twelve more words, across or down, connected with books and films.

act

L	I	T	E	R	A	T	U	R	E
P	E	S	A	U	T	H	O	R	T
A	C	T	O	R	N	R	G	D	R
C	H	F	I	C	T	I	O	N	E
T	A	P	U	R	F	L	S	F	V
E	N	O	V	E	L	L	T	I	I
P	O	E	T	R	Y	E	A	L	E
C	O	M	E	D	Y	R	R	M	W

44.2 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- 1 Many ~~poems~~ are around 300 pages. novels
- 2 Cinema grew in popularity in the first half of the 20th year.
- 3 I enjoy science fiction because I like stories about the past.
- 4 What's happening at the cinema?
- 5 We went to see the film because there was a good article in the newspaper.
- 6 I've been reading a new autobiography of Alfred Hitchcock by Donald Spoto.
- 7 Comedies should make people frightened.

44.3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word on the right.

- 1 William Wordsworth is a very famous poet
 - 2 I thought the film was good
 - 3 Johnny Depp is one of my favourite
 - 4 My daughter wrote a lovely for her school magazine.
 - 5 I thought the in the film was a bit unnatural.
 - 6 I like him very much; he's a great
 - 7 I didn't agree with what the said.
 - 8 Who's your favourite ?
- POETRY
 ENTERTAIN
 ACT
 POETRY
 ACT
 ENTERTAIN
 REVIEW
 DIRECT

44.4 Complete the dialogue.

- A: What's ¹ on at the cinema?
 B: Er, there's the ² film by Fernando Meirelles. It only came out yesterday.
 A: Oh, the guy who ³ *City of God*. He's a very good ⁴, but I don't understand some of his films – they're a bit ⁵ for me. Anything else ⁶ ?
 B: Well, a couple of romantic ⁷, which may be fun. And they're showing *The Kite Runner* again.
 A: Oh, what's that?
 B: It's a film based on the ⁸ by Khaled Hosseini. It's a very good book. Do you ⁹ seeing that?
 A: Yeah, why not.

44.5

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you read novels or poetry? If so, what do you like? Who are your favourite authors?
- 2 Do you go to the cinema? If so, how do you decide which films to go and see?
- 3 Do you often read film reviews?
- 4 What are your favourite films? Who are your favourite actors?

A Musical taste*

People's taste in music is different. I like pop music, my brother likes folk music [music written and played in a traditional style], and my dad prefers classical music.

My brother and I like going to concerts to see groups perform [play] live [in front of a large group of people, called an audience; pronounced to rhyme with *five*]. My dad just listens to music at home; he isn't interested in live performances.

When I listen to music I am mostly interested in the **tune** [the musical notes], but my brother is more interested in the **lyrics** [the words of a song].

*the type of music that you like

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Common mistakes

Classical music (NOT *classie music*)

B Musical instruments and musicians



C People in music

A **composer** is someone who writes music, usually classical music.

A **songwriter** is someone who writes songs, e.g. Paul McCartney, Sting, Chris Martin.

A **conductor** is someone who stands in front of an orchestra [a large group of musicians who play different instruments] and conducts [leads] them.

An **opera singer** is someone who sings opera. [a play in which the words are sung]

A **ballet dancer** is someone who dances in a ballet.

A **solo artist** is someone who sings or plays music but is not part of a group, e.g. Beyoncé, Jay-Z, etc.

Famous groups/bands are Coldplay, U2, etc.

D Making an album

When groups record an **album** [put eight or ten songs onto one CD] or a **single** [one song on a CD], they do it in a **recording studio**. Then, when the album comes out [is in the shops for people to buy], it is usually advertised in the media [there are adverts on TV, in newspapers, etc.]. As well as buying CDs, many people also download their favourite tracks [individual songs from an album] or albums from the Internet.

Exercises

45.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 classical | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a studio |
| 2 solo | <input type="checkbox"/> | b singer |
| 3 recording | <input type="checkbox"/> | c music |
| 4 musical | <input type="checkbox"/> | d dancer |
| 5 opera | <input type="checkbox"/> | e artist |
| 6 ballet | <input type="checkbox"/> | f instrument |

45.2 Complete the sentences.

- There was a very big audience for their last concert – nearly 10,000 people.
- I think their new is a great song.
- The new has songs written by other people. It out next week.
- I've listened to a lot of their music but I've never seen them perform
- Their new album was in a studio near my home.
- The band has a new album out and it's being on TV.

45.3 Find five more pairs of words. Why are they pairs?

flute ballet audience album dancing orchestra concert
conductor flautist composer classical music recording studio

A flautist is a person who plays a flute.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

45.4 Can you complete this music quiz with words from the opposite page?

- Chris Martin is the main singer and songwriter for his group Coldplay.
- The Berlin Philharmonic is an Herbert von Karajan was the from 1955 to 1989.
- Placido Domingo and Luciano Pavarotti were both great
- Waterloo* was Abba's first Number 1 hit
- Sergeant Pepper* is the most famous by The Beatles.
- Eric Clapton is a great rock
- Yo Yo Ma is a great classical
- Rachmaninoff is a famous
- Puccini composed such as *La Bohème*.
- Who was the very famous artist who sang *Thriller*?

45.5

Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

www.irLanguage.com

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- What music do you like? Is your taste in music different from your parents'?
- Who's your favourite solo artist, group or composer?
- What was the last single or album you bought or downloaded?
- When was the last time you heard or saw a group or orchestra perform live?
- Are you usually more interested in the tune or the lyrics of a song?
- Do you play a musical instrument? What do you play?

46 Special events

A A fireworks display

The Sydney fireworks¹ display² is held³ every year, and more than one million people gather⁴ at Sydney harbour⁵ on New Year's Eve to celebrate⁶ the new year.

All age groups are involved⁷ in the event. At 9 pm there is 'Family fireworks' for families with younger children. After that a large number of boats parade⁸ around the harbour. Finally, at midnight, there is a spectacular⁹ fireworks display for almost fifteen minutes in which more than 4,000 kilograms of fireworks light up the night sky.

¹ (see picture)

² a show for people to watch

³ organised

⁴ come together

⁵ area of water where ships are kept and are safe from the sea

⁶ do something enjoyable on a special day

⁷ included (in an event or activity)

⁸ move around as part of a group, often to celebrate something (*parade* is also a noun)

⁹ looking extremely good or exciting



B An arts festival

The Edinburgh Festival¹ is an annual² event, and is the largest arts festival in the world. It consists of³ at least six different festivals which take place⁴ in the city and last⁵ for almost six weeks during August and early September. The most popular⁶ festival is The Fringe, which has up to⁷ 500 daily performances in dance, music, drama and comedy in 180 places across the city.

¹ a number of special events often continuing for several days

² happening once a year

³ is made of

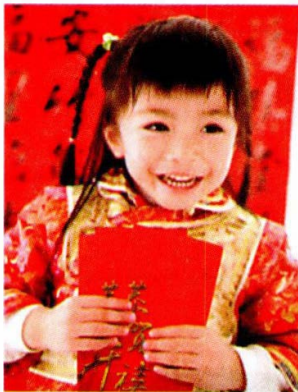
⁴ happen

⁵ continue

⁶ liked by many people

⁷ the maximum (is 500)

C The Chinese Spring Festival



The Spring Festival (or Chinese New Year) is the biggest traditional festival in China. It has been celebrated for about 4,000 years, and takes place every year at some point between 21 January and 20 February. On the day before the festival starts, people from all over¹ China return to their family homes and gather for a big meal. The next day, many people dress up², and children receive money from their parents in red envelopes to bring them luck. Another popular custom is to put two-line poems on the gates outside each home.

¹ everywhere (in China)

² wear special clothes

Language help

A **custom** is something that people usually do. A **tradition** is a very old custom that has continued for a long time. The adjectives are **traditional** and **customary**.

It is traditional to give each other presents.

It is customary to take your shoes off before you enter a mosque.

We went to a traditional Greek wedding (NOT a Greek-traditional wedding).

www.irLanguage.com

Exercises

46.1 Complete the definitions.

- 1 A display is a show for people to watch
- 2 If you are involved in an activity, you are in it.
- 3 If you can have up to 25 people, 25 people is the
- 4 If an event is spectacular, it looks very good or
- 5 A harbour is a place where are kept.
- 6 If people parade round the streets, they round the streets in a group.

46.2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.


- 1 The festival happens in the summer. TAKE The festival takes place in the summer
- 2 The children wear special clothes. DRESS
- 3 People come from everywhere in Japan. ALL
- 4 They hold the event every year. HELD
- 5 Do you do anything special for your birthday? CELEBRATE
- 6 The festival happens every year. ANNUAL

46.3 Complete the text.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

The Fallas is a ¹ traditional ² in Valencia, Spain, which ³ for five days and finishes on March 19th. The Fallas ⁴ place right across the city, and it ⁵ St Joseph, as well as the end of winter and the birth of spring. The festival ⁶ of music, dancing, cooking (the famous paella) and parades, and each area in the city produces a falla, which is a figure made of paper, cardboard, wood, etc. that is burnt on the final day. The fallas are very important, and artists spend months making them.

But the festival is also famous for ⁷ fireworks displays. Every day crowds ⁸ in different parts of the city at 2 pm, when loud firecrackers are set off. ⁹ displays continue every night, and on the final night, there is a huge display when all the fallas are burned. This is called the Crema.



46.4

Over to you

www.irLanguage.com

Think about a festival you know and answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else.

- 1 What kind of festival is it? Is it an arts festival or a traditional festival?
- 2 How often is it held?
- 3 When and where does it take place?
- 4 How long does it last?
- 5 What does it consist of?
- 6 Are there any special traditions or customs as part of the festival?

A Departure*

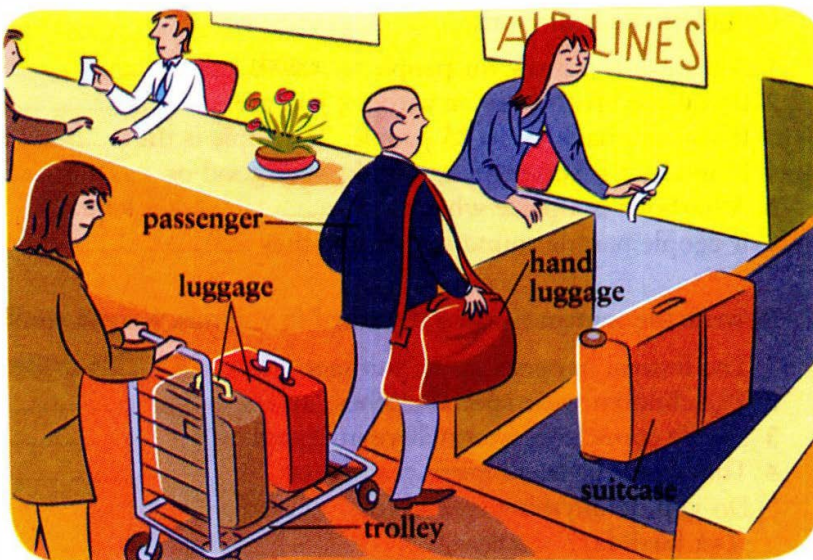
When you arrive at an airport, the **departures board** will show you the **flight numbers** (e.g. BA735), **departure times** (e.g. 08.40), and **destinations**¹.

At **check-in / the check-in desk**, someone will check your ticket and **weigh**² your **luggage**. If it is more than, for example, 20 kilograms, you will have to pay **excess baggage**³. You can take your **hand luggage** with you on the **aircraft**⁴. You also get your **boarding card**⁵ and then you can go through

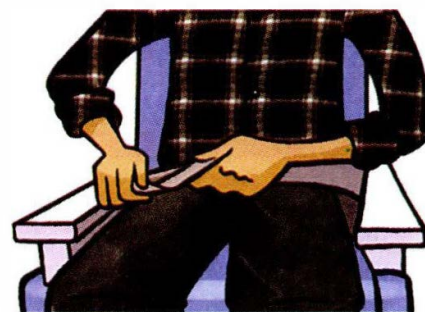
passport control, where someone checks your **passport**⁶, and into the **departure lounge**, where you can buy things in the **duty-free shop**, e.g. **cigarettes** and **perfume**.

Shortly before **take-off**⁷, you go to the place where you get on the plane, e.g. **Gate 3** or **Gate 5**. When you **board the plane**⁸, you can put your **hand luggage** in a small cupboard above your seat called an **overhead locker**.

You then have to **fasten your seat belt**. If there are no **delays**⁹, the plane moves slowly to the **runway**¹⁰, then it takes off.



مرجع زبان ایرانیان



fastening a seatbelt

* when you leave a place, at the start of a journey

¹ where the flights are going to

² see how heavy something is

³ pay extra for your luggage

⁴ plane

⁵ a piece of paper you must show to get on the plane

⁶ looks at your passport carefully

⁷ when the plane takes off / leaves the ground

⁸ get on the plane

⁹ when you have to wait longer than expected

¹⁰ the large road that planes use for take-offs and landings

Common mistakes

www.irLanguage.com

My **flight** number is BA640. (NOT My **fly** number is BA640.) I **slept** the whole **flight**. (NOT I **slept** the whole **fly**.)

B Arrival*

When the plane **lands**¹, there is always an **announcement**² from a member of the **cabin crew**³ telling passengers to wait until the plane completely stops before they stand up. Then you get off the plane and walk through the **terminal building**⁴ to the **baggage reclaim**⁵. When you've got your luggage, you go through **customs**⁶ and leave the airport.

* when someone or something arrives

¹ arrives on the ground

² spoken information to a group of people

³ the people on the aircraft who look after the passengers

⁴ the airport building

⁵ the place where you collect your luggage

⁶ go through the area where your luggage may be checked to make sure you don't have anything illegal.

Exercises

47.1 Complete the words or phrases using words from the box.

board	number	crew	card	control	luggage
reclaim	free	baggage	building	desk	locker

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 departures ..board..... | 7 flight |
| 2 excess | 8 overhead |
| 3 check-in | 9 boarding |
| 4 hand | 10 cabin |
| 5 terminal | 11 baggage |
| 6 duty | 12 passport |

47.2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What's the place where the airline staff check your ticket? the check-in desk
- 2 Who are the people that travel on a plane?
- 3 What do airline staff weigh at the check-in desk?
- 4 What's the piece of paper they give you at the check-in desk?
- 5 What do we call the place you're travelling to?
- 6 What do airport staff do at passport control?
- 7 What do we call the place where you get on the plane?
- 8 What do you call the bags that you can take on the plane with you?
- 9 What's the part of the airport where the plane takes off and lands?

47.3 Complete the email.

Hi Tom

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible ¹ flight. When we were in the airport in Manchester there was an ² telling us that there would be a one-hour ³ because of bad weather, but when we finally ⁴ the plane, there was a further delay before we could ⁵ There was more bad weather over France, and we all had to ⁶ our seat belts, which worried me a bit. In fact, I was almost sick, but the cabin ⁷ were really nice.

It was still raining and very windy when we ⁸ in Rome and I was really glad to get off the plane and get into the ⁹ building. I really hope the return ¹⁰ is a lot better.

See you soon.

Ellie

47.4

Over to you

Answer the questions. If you don't fly very much, ask someone else.

- 1 What is the best part and the worst part of the flight?
- 2 When do you often have delays, and why?
- 3 What do you usually do on the aircraft during the flight?
- 4 What's the first thing you do on arrival?
- 5 Do you ever have anything to declare when you go through customs?

A Hotel facilities and rooms

www.irLanguage.com

Hotel Le Rouge ★★★★★

The hotel is located near The Louvre, Notre Dame and top department stores right in the **heart**¹ of Paris.
Hotel **facilities** include: **room service**², **internet access**³, **air conditioning**⁴ and **parking**.
Our choice of **single**⁵, **double**⁶ or **twin**⁷ rooms are all equipped with **satellite TV**⁸, air conditioning, direct-dial telephone, **mini-bar**⁹, and personal **safe**¹⁰. Bathrooms come with a bath or shower and hair dryer.


¹ centre² staff will bring food and drink to the room³ use of the Internet⁴ a system that keeps the air cool⁵ a room for one person⁶ a room for two people with one big bed⁷ a room for two people with two beds⁸ TV with many channels from different countries⁹ a small fridge¹⁰ a box to keep money and valuable items in

B Staying in a hotel

Rooms are often available¹ during the week, but many hotels are **fully booked**² at weekends or during the holidays, so you may need to **book a room**³ in advance⁴. When you arrive, you check in at reception⁵; at the end of your stay⁶, you check out⁷.

¹ you can find one² all the rooms are taken³ arrange/plan to have a room; *syn* reserve⁴ before you go⁵ say you have arrived and get your room key⁶ the period of time you spend in a place⁷ pay your bill and leave the hotel

C Going to a restaurant

It's often a good idea to **book a table / make a reservation** if you go to a restaurant at the weekend. Many restaurants offer three-course meals which **include** [have as part of the meal] a starter (e.g. soup), main course (e.g. meat or fish) and dessert (e.g. fruit with ice cream). Prices sometimes include 10% **service** as well [amount of money you pay for being served by the waiter]. If service isn't included, it's normal to leave a **tip** [extra money you give to the waiter/waitress].

D Ordering a meal

WAITER: Are you ready to order? [Have you decided what to eat?]

CUSTOMER: Yes, I think so. I'd like to start with the spicy prawns, and then I'll have the fillet steak, with French fries and a mixed salad [lettuce with other vegetables].

WAITER: How would you like your steak? (Rare, medium or well-done?)

CUSTOMER: Medium, please. And I'd like some mineral water as well.

WAITER: Still or sparkling?

CUSTOMER: Er, sparkling.

Common mistakes

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

I'll have the steak. (NOT I+take the steak.)



Exercises

48.1 Put the words into the correct columns. Write titles for the other two groups.

rare	starter	mini-bar	sparkling	main course
room service	medium	dessert	still	well-done
				safe

steak			water
rare			

48.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1 service | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a room |
| 2 room | <input type="checkbox"/> | b access |
| 3 double | <input type="checkbox"/> | c meal |
| 4 three-course | <input type="checkbox"/> | d conditioning |
| 5 main | <input type="checkbox"/> | e service |
| 6 internet | <input type="checkbox"/> | f TV |
| 7 air | <input type="checkbox"/> | g included |
| 8 satellite | <input type="checkbox"/> | h course |

48.3 Complete the sentences.

- Have you booked a room
- Could you first check in at
- Do you want a single or a
- Does the price include
- I the soup, and then the fish for my main course.
- The hotel included internet access, 24-hour reception and a restaurant.
- Service wasn't included, so I left a 10%
- The hotel is in the of the town, close to all the main attractions.
- Would you like a salad with your main
- At the end of your at a hotel, you normally have to out by midday.

48.4 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 I was able to use the Internet. | I had internet <u>access</u> |
| 2 Did you book a table? | Did you make a ? |
| 3 The hotel was fully booked. | There were no rooms |
| 4 You don't pay extra for service. | Service is |
| 5 Did you book it before you went? | Did you book it in ? |
| 6 Is there somewhere to leave the car? | Do you have ? |
| 7 Have you decided what you want to eat? | Are you ready ? |

48.5

Over to you

You are staying in a hotel in your own country. Are these facilities important to you? Why? / Why not?

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| mini-bar | 24-hour room service | air conditioning | satellite TV |
| internet access | parking | restaurant | a personal safe |

49 Sightseeing holidays

A Things to see

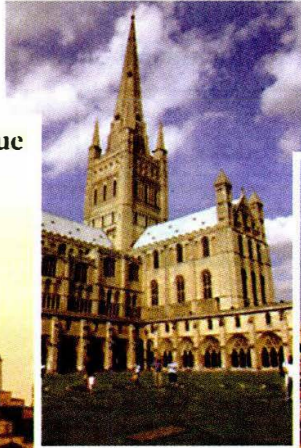


palace

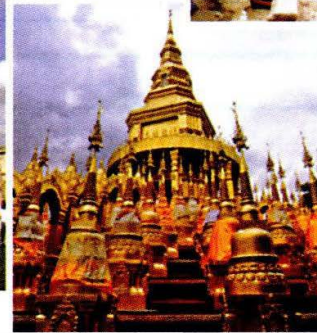
fountain



mosque



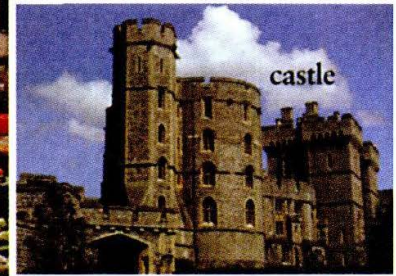
cathedral



temple



market



castle



statue

B Tourist activities

activity	example
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> go sightseeing [visit famous places; also see the sights] 	We went sightseeing almost every day. I like to see the sights when I visit a place.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> do a bit of / a lot of sightseeing 	I didn't do a lot of sightseeing in Warsaw.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> have a look round [visit a place casually, often on foot] 	We had a look round the shops. I want to have a look round the museum.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> explore [go round a new place to see what is there] 	We explored the flower market.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> go out [leave home / your hotel to go to a social event, e.g. restaurant or theatre] 	On holiday we went out every night.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> get lost [lose one's way] 	I got lost three times in London.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> have a great/nice/terrible time 	They had a lovely time in Venice.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> buy souvenirs [something you buy or keep to remember a place or holiday] 	We bought some dolls as souvenirs.

www.irlanguage.com

C Describing places

The word **place** can describe a building, an area, a town, or country, e.g. Bruges is a lovely **place** [town] and we found a really nice **place** [hotel] to stay.

“The **guidebooks** [books with information about places] say the Alhambra in Granada is **magnificent** [very good or very beautiful], but it's always **packed** [very crowded] with tourists in the summer.”

“São Paulo is a **lively place** [full of life and activity], and there's **plenty** [a lot] to do in the evening.”

“St Petersburg has lots of **historic monuments** [important places built a long time ago] but the Hermitage Museum was the **main attraction** for me [something that makes people come to a place or want to do a particular thing].”

“If you go to Poland, it's definitely worth visiting Kraków.”

Language help

We use **worth + noun/-ing** to say that it is a good idea to do something or go somewhere. *It's worth hiring a car if you go to Scotland. Glasgow is worth a visit as well.*

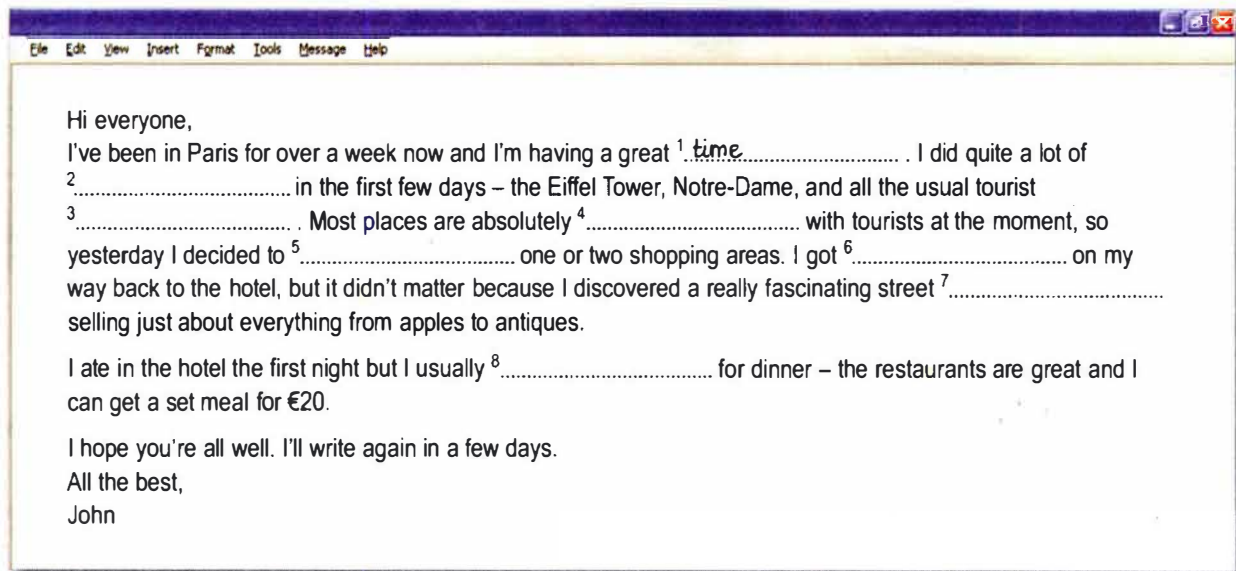
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Exercises

49.1 Tick (✓) the words which refer to religious places.

castle	church ✓	temple
statue	market	cathedral
fountain	mosque	palace

49.2 Complete the email.



49.3 Complete the dialogues, but without using a word from the question.

- A: It's a fabulous city, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's a wonderful *place*.....
- A: It was very crowded, wasn't it?
B: Yes, it was absolutely
- A: It's lively in the evening, isn't it?
B: Yes, there's
- A: Did you enjoy yourselves?
B: Yes, we had a
- A: Kyoto is a good place to go to, isn't it?
B: Yes, Kyoto is definitely
- A: You know a lot about this castle, don't you?
B: Yes, I bought a
- A: St Petersburg has got many famous old places to see, hasn't it?
B: Yes, lots of historic
- A: The Taj Mahal was impressive and so beautiful.
B: Yes, it was
- A: Did you explore the town centre?
B: Yes, we had a

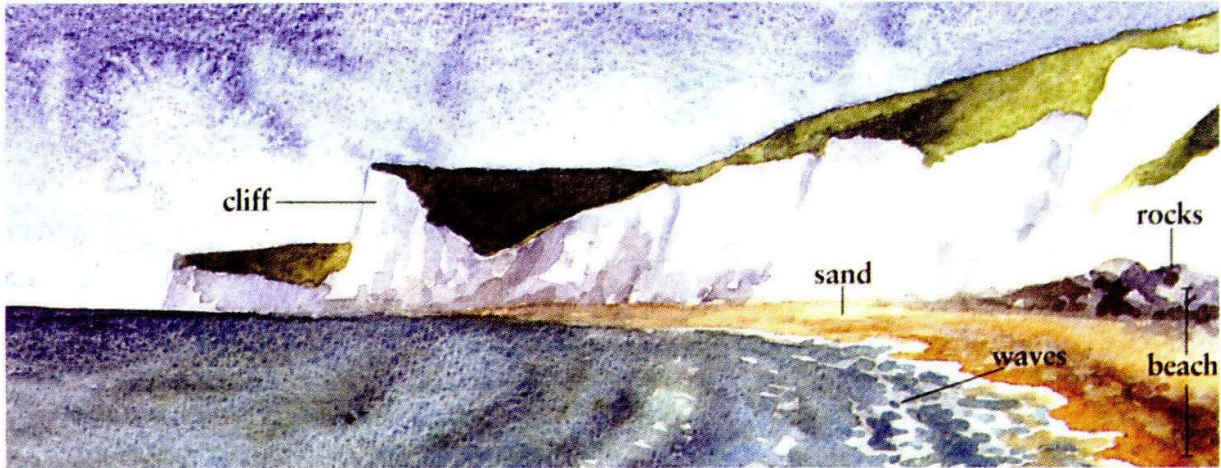
49.4

Over to you

Think about your own country and write answers. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Write down a place that is worth visiting and a place that is not worth visiting and say why.
- Is there a place that is particularly famous for its historic monuments? What are they?
- What typical souvenirs do tourists buy when they visit?
- What are the main attractions for tourists to your country? Do you think they are worth seeing?

The beach



Many people spend their holiday at the coast [the land close to the sea], where there are a lot of seaside resorts [towns by the sea for tourists] and they can go to the beach every day. Generally people prefer beaches that are sandy [with lots of sand], where you can go for a stroll [a casual walk] along the shore [the place where the sea meets the land] in the sunshine [when it is sunny]. On the beach, you also sometimes get a breeze [a nice gentle wind] that blows off the sea.

Beach activities



surfing



windsurfing



diving



playing volleyball



sunbathing

Volleyball is a popular beach game and some people enjoy water sports such as surfing, windsurfing or diving. If the sea is calm¹, you can go for a swim, but a lot of people just want to lie on the beach and sunbathe and get a nice (sun)tan². However, there are now worries about the dangers of sunbathing. People who lie in the sun without any protection³ can get sunburn⁴, and worse still, they are at risk of⁵ getting skin cancer. Doctors now recommend⁶ that people do not sit in the sun without using sunscreen⁷. It may be safer just to sit in the shade⁸.

¹ without waves (does not move very much); *opp* rough

² when the skin becomes brown

³ something to keep someone safe

⁴ when the skin becomes red and very sore

⁵ if you are at risk of something, there is a danger that something bad may happen to you

⁶ say what someone should do

⁷ cream that gives protection from the sun; *syns* sunblock, sun cream

⁸ an area where there is no light from the sun, so it is darker and less hot

Language help

www.irLanguage.com

We can go for a walk, a drive (a journey in the car for pleasure), a swim, a coffee [drink some coffee], a drink (often an alcoholic drink, e.g. wine, beer). We can also have a swim, a coffee, a drink.

We went for a drive along the coast. I had a coffee at Caffé Nero. Let's go for a drink tonight.

Exercises

50.1 Write down four more words beginning with *sun*.

sun shine sun sun sun sun

50.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 sun | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a shade |
| 2 wind | <input type="checkbox"/> | b sea |
| 3 seaside | <input type="checkbox"/> | c surfing |
| 4 sit in the | <input type="checkbox"/> | d tan |
| 5 sandy | <input type="checkbox"/> | e resort |
| 6 rough | <input type="checkbox"/> | f beach |

50.3 Cover the opposite page. What are these people doing?



1 playing
volleyball



2



3



4



5

50.4 Cross out the wrong answer.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1 The beach was | a lovely | b calm | c sandy | d dirty |
| 2 We went for a | a drive | b shop | c drink | d stroll |
| 3 The sea was | a sandy | b calm | c rough | d cold |
| 4 I enjoy | a surfing | b diving | c getting sunburn | d windsurfing |
| 5 We walked | a along the beach | b by the shore | c on the waves | d on the sand |
| 6 The beach was | a near the cliffs | b by the breeze | c by the rocks | d very sandy |

50.5 Complete the sentences.

- I love sunbathing, so I can get a nice suntan
- Doctors that you stay out of the sun completely in the middle of the day.
- We used to sunbathe for hours, but then we didn't know we were at of getting skin cancer.
- I always take a beach umbrella to give me from the sun when it is very hot.
- In the city it feels like there's no air, but you often get a nice by the sea.
- I love going for a along the beach, especially in the evening when it's quiet.
- I don't like sitting in the sun; I prefer to sit in the
- We decided to a swim before lunch.

50.6

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- Do you ever spend time at seaside resorts? Where do you go, and how often?
- Do you enjoy any of the beach activities on the opposite page? Which ones?
- Do you like sunbathing? Why? / Why not?
- Do you get a suntan easily? Have you ever had sunburn? Do you often use sunscreen?
- What do you like to do in the evening after a day on the beach?

Answer key

Unit 1

1.1 *Your own answers*

1.2 *Your own answers*

1.3 *Your own answers*

1.4 2 temporary 3 cruel/unkind 4 rough 5 exit/way out 6 alive 7 refuse

1.5 2 argument 4 choose 6 difference; differ
3 revision 5 expansion 7 communication; communicative

1.6 *Your own answers*

Unit 2

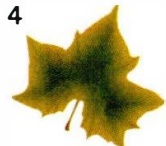
2.1	food	garden	numbers
	diet, lay the table, flour, raw, butcher, frozen, e.g. <i>frozen peas</i>	branch, dig, ground, leaf, butterfly, frozen, e.g. <i>the ground is frozen</i>	count, add up, minus, thousand, zero

2.2 *Possible answers:*

2 translation

3 a person who sells meat

4



5 translation

6 put plates, knives, forks, etc. on a table before a meal

7 translation is probably the easiest way

8 six minus four is two ($6 - 4 = 2$)

2.3 2 (synonym) A synonym for *awful* is *dreadful*.

3 (opposite) The opposite of *necessary* is *unnecessary*.

4 (word partner and part of speech) You *translate* something *into* another language; the noun is *translation*.

5 (meanings) *Tip* has two meanings: a piece of advice, and money you give a waiter for serving you.

6 (grammar and part of speech) *Enjoy* is followed by an *-ing* form; the noun is *enjoyment*, the adjective is *enjoyable*.

2.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 3

3.1 2 really 5 clothes 8 beautiful
3 unfortunately 6 comfortable 9 unbelievable
4 especially 7 accommodation 10 necessary

3.2 1 knee (k) 2 comb (b) 3 castle (t) 4 salmon (l) 5 receipt (p)

3.3 2 amount 3 behave 4 official 5 emphasise 6 relating to

- 3.4 2 The 'z' spelling is usual in American English, but both are possible in British English.
 3 an adverb
 4 uncountable
 5 on
 6 She's an old friend; he's my best friend; you make friends with people. You may also have found these common word partners (a close friend, a friend of mine)
- 3.5 1 definition 3 2 definition 1 3 definition 4 4 definition 2

Unit 4

4.1

parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation
<i>noun</i> , adjective, adverb, preposition	comma, question mark, full stop	phonemic symbol, stress, syllable

- 4.2 2 in Seville (preposition) 7 wonderful **hotel**/place (noun)
 3 took/got a train (verb) 8 to Spain (preposition)
 4 a beautiful city (indefinite article) 9 never stays (adverb)
 5 expensive hotel (adjective) 10 if I have (pronoun)
 6 of money (preposition)

- 4.3 2 a capital letter 7 phrasal verbs
 3 a full stop 8 punctuation
 4 a question mark 9 with (phonemic) symbols
 5 a comma 10 late
 6 uncountable noun

- 4.4 'English 2 in'formal 3 'opposite 3 'syllable 3
 de'cide 2 'adjective 3 edu'cation 4 pronun'ciation 5

- 4.5 2 cheaply; dangerously 3 find 4 un- 5 -ness

Unit 5

- 5.1 2 Thai 7 Arabic
 3 Spanish 8 German
 4 Israel 9 England/the UK, the USA, Australia
 5 China 10 (Swiss) German, French, Italian
 6 Portuguese

- 5.2 2 Asia / the Far East 5 the Caribbean
 3 the Middle East 6 South America
 4 Europe

- 5.3 Chinese; Japan; Portuguese; Egyptian; Australia; Arabic; Saudi Arabia; Scandinavia

- 5.4 2 Turkey 3 South Korea 4 Russia 5 Argentina 6 Greece

- 5.5 2 Germans 5 Brazilians 7 The Swiss
 3 the Japanese 6 the British 8 Russians
 4 Israelis

5.6 Possible answers:

- 1 I'm French.
 2 The capital of France is Paris. I think the population of France is about 60 million.
 3 French.
 4 I can speak Italian and English.
 5 I have visited Germany, Spain, Italy and the UK.
 6 I don't know the Far East, so I would like to visit China and Japan.

Unit 6

- 6.1** 2 in the west 4 in the north-east 6 in the north-east
3 in the south-west 5 in the north-west 7 in the south
- 6.2** 2 coldest place on Earth / in the world 6 waterfall
3 hottest place on Earth / in the world 7 rainforest in the world
4 Cave 8 ocean
5 Canal 9 planet
- 6.3** 2 covered 8 consists
3 regions 9 Earth
4 contrasts 10 climate
5 covers 11 distance; distance
6 landscape 12 minus; degrees
7 temperature

6.4 Possible answers:

- 1 In England, 30°C is about the highest; minus 5 degrees is about the lowest during the day.
- 2 I like the fact it isn't too hot or too cold, but I would like more sun and less rain.
- 3 It's flatter in the east, and there are more hills in the west. There is also an area in the north of England with some large lakes. There are more mountains in Scotland.
- 4 We have a number of long canals, and lots of caves. We don't have any famous waterfalls.
- 5 It's very hilly, with several large rivers nearby.
- 6 I live in a medium-sized town which is ten miles from Bristol.

Unit 7

- 7.1** 2 f 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d
- 7.2** 2 It's snowing. 3 It's cloudy. 4 It's raining. 5 It's icy. 6 It's sunny.
- 7.3** 2 False. It's not nice to sit outside when it's freezing. / It's nice to sit outside when it's warm
3 True
4 False. A shower is a short period of rain.
5 True
6 False. If it's humid, the air will feel warm and wet.
7 False. A mild winter means it is warmer than usual.
8 True
- 7.4** 2 cold 5 degrees; zero; extremely 8 temperature
3 shower 6 thunderstorm 9 cool
4 pouring 7 came

7.5 Possible answers for England:

We sometimes get humid weather in the summer. We occasionally get thick fog in the winter, especially in the morning. We sometimes get storms in winter. Thunderstorms sometimes occur in the summer at the end of a period of hot weather. Temperatures below zero are not common during the day, but do occur at night in the winter. We sometimes get strong winds in the autumn and winter, and showers can be frequent at any time of the year, but especially in the spring.

Unit 8

8.1	farm animals	wild animals	insects
	horse, goat, bull, pig, donkey	monkey, elephant, tiger, camel, leopard	fly, bee, mosquito, ant, butterfly

- 8.2** 3 different 6 different 9 different
 4 different 7 same 10 different
 5 same 8 different

- 8.3** 2 wild 3 cage 4 insects 5 rare 6 protect

- 8.4** 2 Monkeys 4 Whales 6 Snakes 8 Parrots
 3 Camels 5 Giraffes 7 Elephants

8.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 Yes. I've got a dog called Max.
- 2 No.
- 3 I don't like seeing birds in cages, but I can understand why we need to keep some wild animals in zoos.
- 4 I'm not frightened of animals, but I don't like it when birds get inside the house and fly around the rooms; it's scary!

Unit 9

- 9.1** DOWN: heel, knee, chest, ankle, chin
 ACROSS: cheek, hip, elbow, lip(s), skin

- 9.2** 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 d

- 9.3** 2 lips 3 chin 4 shoulder 5 waist 6 cheek 7 neck 8 chest

9.4 *Possible answers:*

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 2 running | 6 when they mean 'no' |
| 3 when someone says something funny | 7 when they mean 'yes' |
| 4 when they see someone they know or say goodbye to someone | 8 when they're sad |
| 5 when they have a cold | 9 when they're tired |

Unit 10

- 10.1** 2 looking 3 hair 4 shoulders 5 smart 6 height 7 dark

- 10.2** Your **height** is how **tall** you are.
 Your **weight** is how much you weigh.
Roughly and **approximately** are similar in meaning.
Medium and **average** are similar in meaning.
Broad and **narrow** are opposite in meaning.
Wavy and **curly** are similar in meaning, and describe hair.

- 10.3** 2 gorgeous 5 pretty 8 roughly/approximately
 3 attractive/handsome 6 overweight 9 tallish
 4 athletic 7 ordinary

10.4 *Possible answers from a man:*

- 1 I'm about one metre 78.
- 2 It's dark brown and quite wavy.
- 3 My girlfriend is about one metre 68. She's very attractive in my opinion, and she's got short blonde hair, which is straight. I don't know how much she weighs; I wouldn't ask her that.

Unit 11

11.1

positive	negative
nice	unpleasant
generous	mean
sensible	silly
hard-working	lazy
calm	nervous

11.2 2 unfriendly 3 unpleasant 4 impatient 5 dishonest 6 unreliable

11.3 2 mean 5 shy 8 calm
3 unreliable 6 sensible 9 creative
4 patient 7 serious 10 talented

11.4 2 nervous 5 humour 8 character
3 wish 6 clever/intelligent 9 stupid
4 lazy 7 trust 10 kind

11.5 *Possible answers:*

I think I am quite positive (2), very reliable (1), not very confident (3), a bit lazy (4), have quite a good sense of humour (2) and am quite impatient (5).

I would like to be creative and more patient; I would hate to be mean.

Unit 12

12.1 Nouns: jealousy, confusion, disappointment, anxiety
Adjectives: proud, curious, emotional

12.2 2 f 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 e

12.3 scared 6 cheerful 5 upset 3 confused 2 depressed 4

12.4 2 feelings/emotions 6 mood
3 energetic 7 hopeful
4 effect 8 frightened/scared
5 stress

12.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm not sure that colour does, but the weather certainly affects me. I feel more positive when the sun is shining, and rain makes me depressed.

2 I think I suffer from stress sometimes at work, or if I have too many things on my mind.

3 I don't think my mood changes much from day to day.

4 I feel more energetic in the evening.

Unit 13

13.1 2 niece 5 brother-in-law 8 only
3 nephew 6 elder
4 sister-in-law 7 cousin

13.2 2 Remarry 6 Twins
3 Relatives/Relations 7 Mate
4 best 8 Friendship
5 old 9 stepfather

13.3 2 married 3 altogether 4 since 5 get on (well) 6 ex

13.4 Possible answers for Laura, aged 20:

- 1 I have an elder sister called Rosie.
- 2 Yes, very well.
- 3 No, not especially close, but we all get on well.
- 4 My cousin Daniel; he got married last year.
- 5 Anita.
- 6 I've known her for nine years.
- 7 We started secondary school at the same time.

Unit 14

14.1 2 early twenties 5 middle-aged 8 an adult
3 mid-thirties 6 elderly 9 teens
4 teenager 7 retired 10 toddler

14.2 2 True 5 False. At first life wasn't easy.
3 False. Her parents were very strict. 6 False. She managed to get a job in Cardiff.
4 True

14.3 2 in the end I did it 8 managed to pass my exams
3 roughly/about my age 9 stayed out late
4 nearly thirty now 10 let me wear what I liked
5 strict 11 childhood
6 allowed to stay up and watch TV 12 retired
7 brought up in Scotland

14.4 Possible answers:

- 1 I was brought up in a town called Dartmouth.
- 2 It's on the coast and I remember going to the beach a lot with my family and friends.
- 3 My mum was quite strict, but not my dad. They didn't let me swim in certain places because they thought it was dangerous.
- 4 Up to the age of 17, I had to be home on the last bus, which was about 11:15. When I learnt to drive, I stayed out later than that.

Unit 15

15.1 I went out with Simon. 3
We got married. 5
I got pregnant three months later. 8
We got engaged. 4
I got to know Simon. 2
Our son was born just after our first anniversary. 9
We went on our honeymoon. 7
I met Simon at a party. 1
We had a big reception. 6

15.2 2 date 4 pregnant 6 bride; (bride)groom
3 marriage 5 anniversary 7 give

15.3 1 couple
2 to know; wedding
3 ceremony; honeymoon
4 left; wrong; his own; divorced / a divorce

15.4 Possible answers:

- 1 I was 14 or 15 and I went to a party with a girl called Yvonne.
- 2 Yes, it was at university when I was about 20. Her name was Liz and we were together for almost three years.
- 3 The last wedding I went to was my cousin's, who got married to a man I had never met.
- 4 I went to a friend's 30th birthday party.

Unit 16

16.1 Possible answers:

have a late night / an early night / a sleep / a wash / a shower / a bath / a snack / a light lunch
do the washing / the ironing / the housework / the shopping

16.2 2 h 3 e 4 c 5 f 6 b 7 a 8 d

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 2 usually wakes me up | 7 don't bother with a full meal |
| 3 have a snack in the afternoon | 8 have cereal for breakfast |
| 4 go out on Friday | 9 housework; fortunately/luckily I have a husband |
| 5 friends come round | 10 I try to reply to them straight away |
| 6 eat out at the weekend | |

- | | | |
|-----------|--------------|------------|
| 2 instead | 4 early | 6 takeaway |
| 3 stay in | 5 come round | 7 chat |

16.5 Possible answers:

Similar

- 1 I usually have a light lunch.
- 2 I have my main meal in the evening.
- 3 I sometimes have a bath instead of a shower in the winter.

Different

- 1 I usually wake up before 7.00 am.
- 2 I have a shower in the morning.
- 3 I do my own washing because I don't have a cleaner.

Unit 17

- | | |
|---|---|
| 2 False. They used to live in the centre of town. | 7 False. A French couple live upstairs. |
| 3 False. They rent their flat. | 8 False. The parents own a cottage. |
| 4 True | 9 True |
| 5 False. They live on the second floor. | 10 True |
| 6 True | |

- 17.2 Positive: air conditioning, character, charming
Negative: dark, no central heating

17.3 2 a lift 3 a balcony 4 a cottage 5 front door 6 steps

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 2 on; downstairs | 5 outskirts | 8 floor; lift |
| 3 space | 6 balcony | 9 moved |
| 4 location | 7 heat | 10 light |

17.5 Possible answers:

I live in a house, which I own, and it's near the centre of town. I've lived here for seven years now. I used to live in a house in London, but I moved because I didn't need to be in London for my job. I've got central heating where I live, but I haven't got air conditioning or a balcony.

Unit 18

- 18.1** 2 in the microwave 4 in the washing machine 6 in a cupboard
3 in the oven 5 in the dishwasher (or sink) 7 in the freezer

- 18.2** 2 sink, in the kitchen
3 curtains, in the living room or the bedroom
4 cushions, in the living room
5 kettle, in the kitchen
6 washbasin, in the bathroom
7 carpet, in the living room or the bedrooms
8 pillow, in the bedroom
9 washing machine, in the utility room or the kitchen
10 cooker, in the kitchen
11 armchair, in the living room
12 tiles, in any room, though more likely in the kitchen or bathroom

- 18.3** 2 wooden 5 share; own 8 blanket; duvet
3 choice 6 spare 9 en suite
4 study 7 tap(s) 10 utility

18.4 *Possible answers:*

- 1 tiles 2 tiles 3 carpet and a couple of rugs 4 curtains 5 a duvet

18.5 *Possible answers:*

- I like big sofas with lots of cushions.
I prefer a wooden floor with rugs.
I have no preference – it depends on the blinds and the curtains.
I prefer a duvet.
I must have two pillows. I can't stand only one pillow.

Unit 19

- 19.1** 2 spill/spilt/spilt 5 run out/ran out/run out
3 burn/burnt/burnt 6 tear/tore/torn
4 fall over/fell over/fallen over 7 hit/hit/hit

- 19.2** 2 h 3 f 4 g 5 c 6 a 7 b 8 e

- 19.3** 2 over 5 hopeless 8 hit
3 clear 6 mood 9 fell
4 remove 7 slipped (fell over is also possible) 10 worse

19.4 *Possible answers:*

- 2 I dropped it on the floor.
3 I fell over. / I slipped and fell over.
4 There's something wrong with the TV.
5 I forgot it. / I left it at home.
6 It isn't working properly.
7 It's out of order.

19.5 *Possible answers:*

- I occasionally drop cups or glasses, usually when I'm drying them.
We run out of bread or milk quite regularly, and I have to go out and buy some.
I fell over in the snow last week, but I don't usually fall over very much.
I sometimes forget people's names, which is embarrassing.
I occasionally burn food.
I don't spill things very often.
I always leave my glasses lying around and then I can't find them when I need them.

Unit 20

- 20.1 2 No 3 No 4 No 5 Yes 6 Yes 7 Yes 8 No 9 Yes 10 Yes
- 20.2 2 a bank loan 3 fee(s) 4 cash 5 rent 6 cashpoint 7 currency
- 20.3 2 She wasted the money. 5 He charged us £25.
3 I can't afford to go. 6 I owe a lot of money.
4 We could hire a car. 7 I always check my account carefully.
- 20.4 2 account 3 amount 4 earn 5 owe 6 pay (them) back 7 accommodation

20.5 Possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I've had an account for about fifteen years.
2 I don't check my account very often. (see next answer)
3 I get money from a cashpoint about once a week, and I always ask for a receipt so that I know how much is in my account.
4 I had a bank loan to buy my first car – that's all.
5 Yes, I'm saving up for a holiday.
6 Yes, I rent a flat with a friend. We had to pay a deposit of one month's rent.

Unit 21

- 21.1 3 different 4 different 5 same 6 different 7 same 8 different
- 21.2 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 – 7 – 8 a 9 – 10 a
- 21.3 2 sick 5 bleeding 8 serious
3 hurts 6 suffer
4 bandage 7 aches
- 21.4 people have heart attacks
surgeons perform operations
tablets/pills are common forms of medicine
hepatitis affects the liver
people have sore throats

21.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I take tablets such as aspirin.
2 I hardly ever get a cough or sore throat.
3 No, I haven't been a patient.
4 I had to go into hospital for a minor operation, but I didn't have to stay overnight.
5 We have various tablets for pain, e.g. paracetamol or Ibuprofen. We usually have different medicines for colds and flu, or for stomach problems.

Unit 22

22.1	Items of clothing	Jewellery	Parts of clothing
	boots, top, jumper, scarf, cap, tights	earrings, ring, bracelet, necklace	button, zip, pocket, sleeve, collar

- 22.2 2 The first woman is wearing a necklace; the second isn't.
3 The first woman has four pockets on her jacket; the second has two.
4 The first woman has two buttons on her jacket sleeve; the second has one.
5 The second woman is wearing earrings; the first isn't.
6 The second woman is wearing a bracelet; the first isn't.
- 22.3 2 in 5 suit 8 undid
3 dressed 6 up 9 rucksack
4 on 7 into 10 dressed

22.4 *Possible answers for an English woman:*

- 1 I always wear earrings, and I sometimes wear a ring and a necklace. I don't wear a bracelet very often.
- 2 I think dark colours suit me best.
- 3 I prefer to wear casual clothes, but I have to wear smart clothes for work.
- 4 I hope I look quite stylish, but I'm not sure I do.
- 5 I never wear a cap, but I sometimes wear a hat.
- 6 I often wear T-shirts, but I never wear trainers.

Possible answers for an English boy:

- 1 I hardly ever wear a suit.
- 2 I don't like wearing ties – but I have to wear one for school.
- 3 I almost always undo the top button on my shirt – unless I'm cold.
- 4 I always change into jeans after school.
- 5 I don't wear a cap or a hat.
- 6 I wear T-shirts a lot, and I always wear trainers.

Unit 23

23.1 2 different 3 different 4 similar 5 different 6 different 7 similar

23.2 2 fashion 5 good on you 8 dresses
 3 with your skirt 6 fit
 4 got on 7 tight

23.3 2 reasonable 5 changing room 8 serve
 3 wardrobe 6 designer labels / designers
 4 fashionable / in fashion 7 shop assistant

23.4 2 try 5 fit 8 size
 3 changing 6 tight 9 suited/suits
 4 served 7 shame/pity 10 leave

23.5 *Possible answers for a young man:*

I occasionally shop with a friend but usually on my own.
 I always try on shoes and trousers before I buy them, but not shirts.
 I sometimes buy clothes that don't suit me, but that's just a mistake. I never buy clothes just because they're fashionable.
 If I buy trousers, I don't usually buy a shirt to go with it. But if I buy a jacket, I might buy a shirt to go with it.
 My wardrobe does have quite a few things that I hardly ever wear.
 I don't buy designer labels unless they're reduced in the sales; the price has to be reasonable.
 I like casual clothes. I don't really care whether they're fashionable.
 I'm not always happy with what I've got on, but if I'm honest, I don't think about it much.

Unit 24

24.1 2 True
 3 True
 4 False. Expensive items are on the middle shelves.
 5 True
 6 True
 7 True
 8 False. Sometimes you buy more than you need and throw some of it away.

24.2 con'venient 'checkout 'entrance a 'refund re'place 'item

- 24.3** 2 shopping centres 5 shopping centres
 3 street markets 6 both, but probably more true of shopping centres
 4 street markets

- 24.4** 2 makes; replace 5 offer 8 atmosphere
 3 throw 6 entrance 9 likely
 4 queue 7 range

24.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 I go to a supermarket once a week. I don't like shopping there, but it is convenient.
- 2 I hardly ever go to shopping centres. I don't like them very much.
- 3 I go to a small food market once a week. I really like it because you get to know the people who have the stalls and they often sell things which are a bit different.
- 4 I don't often haggle for things; I'm not very good at it.
- 5 I take things back to shops if there is something wrong with them, and usually I get a refund.

Unit 25

- 25.1** 1 vegetable: *pea(s)* fruit: peach, pear, pineapple
 2 vegetable: garlic fruit: grapes
 3 vegetable: mushroom fruit: melon
 4 vegetable: spinach fruit: strawberry
 5 vegetable: onion fruit: olive

25.2 lettuce/chicken, aubergine/tomato, onion/mushroom, prawn/pork, salmon/lamb

- 25.3** 2 cabbage, the others are all used in salad
 3 crab, the others are all meat
 4 peach, the others are all vegetables
 5 broccoli, the others are all types of seafood
 6 chicken, the others are all vegetables

25.4 *These are the most likely answers:*

melon: NO grapes: YES peaches: YES or SOMETIMES
 pears: YES or SOMETIMES lemon: NO

- 25.5** 1 lamb; veal; pork 4 a vegetarian
 2 lettuce 5 bunch
 3 oil and vinegar (oil and lemon is also possible)

25.6 *Possible answers for the UK:*

- 1 Strawberries and pears are more common than pineapple.
- 2 Lamb and beef are more expensive than pork or chicken.
- 3 lettuce, tomato and cucumber; sometimes onion and red pepper as well
- 4 aubergine, red pepper, pineapple, melons, grapes or peaches
- 5 veal
- 6 Peaches are my favourite fruit. / Lamb is my favourite meat.

Unit 26

26.1 fry, grill, roast, bake, barbecue

26.2 raw – door; sour – hour; oven – love; pie – lie; saucepan – four

- 26.3** 2 ~~cooker~~ cook 5 ~~good in~~ good at
 3 ~~fry pan~~ frying pan 6 ~~tastes~~ flavours
 4 ~~sour~~ bitter

- 26.4** 2 chef 5 sour
 3 tasty 6 raw
 4 cooker 7 delicious; horrible/terrible/unpleasant

- 26.5** 2 ingredients 5 chopped 8 stirred
 3 peeled 6 fried 9 tasted
 4 boiled 7 added

26.6 *Possible answers for a British person:*

- 1 We eat a lot of roast beef, baked potatoes and barbecued chicken in the UK. We sometimes eat fried rice but we don't usually eat raw fish unless we go to a Japanese restaurant.
- 2 I like bitter chocolate, I like spicy food, and I like the taste of garlic. I don't like chocolate-flavoured ice cream very much – I prefer vanilla.
- 3 The weather isn't good enough in the UK to cook outside on a barbecue very often.
- 4 I'm not a great cook but I'm quite good at making desserts.

Unit 27

- 27.1** 2 f 3 g 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 h 8 e

- 27.2** 2 It was quiet. 5 There are disadvantages.
 3 It's very dirty. 6 There's nowhere to park.
 4 It was very dull/boring.

- 27.3** 2 cultural 3 variety 4 night 5 stuck 6 value

- 27.4** 2 exhausted 5 pollution 8 going on
 3 stressed 6 hurry 9 get poverty
 4 lively 7 park

27.5 *Possible answers for a town in the south of England:*

- 1 It's quite bad from 8.00 to 9.00 in the morning, and then again from 4.30 to 6.00 pm.
- 2 It's very good for a medium-sized town: lots of restaurants and bars, a few nightclubs, two or three cinemas, two or three theatres, several concert halls, etc.
- 3 Yes it is. As well as cinema, theatre and concerts, we have a number of festivals: a literature festival, a jazz festival, a food festival, and lots of cultural talks and lectures you can go to.
- 4 There is pollution in the town centre because it's between two hills.
- 5 The crime rate isn't bad because it is quite a rich town, and I feel safe at night.
- 6 Living in my town has lots of advantages. There are lots of things to do, like go to the cinema, theatre, etc. There are plenty of shops too, and a train station. But some of the disadvantages are that there are too many cars and traffic jams and this means there is pollution too.

Unit 28

- 28.1** 2 grass 3 leaves 4 woods 5 plants 6 roots 7 branches 8 crops

- 28.2** 2 countryside (also country) 4 own 6 ground/grass
 3 up 5 season 7 keep

- 28.3** 2 gate 3 tractor 4 footpath 5 field 6 valley 7 woods 8 farmhouse

- 28.4** 2 spaces 5 surrounded 8 public 11 away
 3 air 6 worst 9 hopeless
 4 pick 7 get 10 much

28.5 *Possible answers:*

I agree with most of the ideas in the text. I also think that life in the country is probably less stressful than in a big city, and probably healthier too. One of the disadvantages of living in the country is that you become totally dependent on having a car.

Unit 29

- 29.1** 2 ride 5 run 8 fares
3 get in 6 fly 9 driver
4 journey 7 missed 10 off; stop
- 29.2** 2 van 4 lorry (also truck) 6 bicycle/bike
3 motorbike 5 coach
- 29.3** 2 journey 5 reliable 8 complaining
3 convenient; away 6 queue 9 season
4 corner 7 return 10 platform

29.4 Possible answers:

- 1 Generally yes.
- 2 Prices vary a great deal in England. Sometimes a return is twice the price of a single, but sometimes it is not much more than a single.
- 3 Where I live is very convenient for the train station if I need to travel out of town.
- 4 No, I haven't got a season ticket, but they can often save you a lot of money.
- 5 I don't take taxis very often; only if I need to get home late at night.
- 6 I usually ride my bike once a week.

Unit 30

- 30.1** 2 pedestrians 4 pedestrian crossing 6 brake
3 pavement 5 (road) junction 7 road sign
- 30.2** 2 lane 5 motorway 8 (road) junction
3 traffic light(s) 6 bridge
4 overtaking 7 bend
- 30.3** 2 lost 4 via 6 ended
3 direct 5 way 7 turning
- 30.4** 2 accident 5 speed 8 damaged
3 approaching 6 swerve 9 injuries
4 overtake 7 crashed

30.5 Possible answers for England:

- 1 Yes, it's 70 mph. (about 115 kph)
- 2 There are usually three lanes.
- 3 Yes, they do.
- 4 Not very often, but it sometimes happens if the road is very narrow.

Unit 31

- 31.1** 2 Mind the step
3 Admission free
4 Out of order
5 No vacancies/entry/exit
6 Do not lean out of the window / leave bags unattended
7 Please queue other side
8 Mind your head
9 Please do not disturb / Please do not feed the animals
10 Keep off the grass
11 Keep right/left
12 Silence examination in progress

- 31.2** 2 On a vending machine (a machine selling drinks and snacks)
 3 In a zoo
 4 In a hotel window
 5 At a theatre
 6 In a bank or post office
 7 On a parcel
- 31.3** 2 Do not leave bags unattended 6 Mind your head
 3 Please do not disturb 7 Admission free
 4 No parking 8 SILENCE – examination in progress
 5 Do not lean out of the window
- 31.4** No exit, Silence – examination in progress, out of order, keep right, mind the step, no entry
- 31.5** *Possible signs in English you might see are:*
 English spoken here
 Entrance [you go in here]
 Flat to let [advertising a flat that you can rent]
 Cyclists dismount here [people on bicycles must get off their bikes here]
 No through road [there is no way out for cars at the other end of this road]

Unit 32

- 32.1** 2 c 3 h 4 a 5 f 6 d 7 e 8 b
- 32.2** 2 to look up the meaning of words
 3 a plug
 4 to rub something out
 5 because you haven't got one (or someone else hasn't got one)
 6 to highlight something
 7 to sharpen a pencil
 8 to measure something, or perhaps to underline something
- 32.3** 2 How do you pronounce 'swap'? 4 How do you use the word 'swap' in a sentence?
 3 How do you spell 'swap'?
- 32.4** 2 Could you turn up the CD player?
 3 Could you lend me a dictionary?
 4 Could you repeat that, please?
 5 Could you explain the difference between *lend* and *borrow*?
 6 Could I borrow your ruler?
 7 Could we swap places?
- 32.5** *Your own answers*

Unit 33

- 33.1** 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 h 6 d 7 c 8 a
- 33.2** 2 primary 3 secondary 4 take; leave 5 stay 6 go (on)
- 33.3** 2 timetable 3 into 4 both are correct 5 break 6 break up
 7 get 8 dress (you can wear what you want = you can dress the way you want)
- 33.4** 2 wear 3 male; female 4 trouble 5 punished 6 atmosphere
- 33.5** *Your own answers*

Unit 34

- 34.1** 2 both are correct 3 up 4 revise for 5 do 6 both are correct 7 failed

- 34.2** 2 grade 5 work 8 hard work
 3 candidates 6 increase; basic 9 willing
 4 essay 7 vowels; consonants

- 34.3** 2 revision 3 my best 4 exam preparation 5 things wrong 6 ear for language

- 34.4** 2 accent 4 accurate 6 through
 3 fluent 5 understood 7 well

34.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 35

- 35.1** 2 engineering 3 medicine 4 economics 5 law 6 architecture

- 35.2** I did a degree course. 5
 I passed with good grades. 2
 I got a Master's. 8
 I did a postgraduate course. 7
 I did my final exams at school. 1
 I became an undergraduate. 4
 I got a place at university. 3
 I got a degree in business studies. 6

- 35.3** 2 False. You have to get good grades in your school exams.
 3 True
 4 False. Most degree courses last three years.
 5 True
 6 False. If you are successful, you get a degree.
 7 False. Students studying for their first degree are called undergraduates.
 8 False. Science students do not write a lot of essays. (They spend their time in laboratories.) Arts students have to write a lot of essays.
 9 True
 10 False. If you study arts subjects you work in a library. / If you study science subjects you work in a laboratory.

- 35.4** 2 degree 3 went on 4 lasted 5 into 6 research 7 qualification

35.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 36

- 36.1** 2 d 3 f 4 e 5 a 6 b

- 36.2** 2 sailor 6 accountant
 3 mechanic 7 plumber, carpenter, electrician, builder, mechanic and surgeon
 4 vet 8 doctor, surgeon, dentist, vet, pilot, electrician
 5 pilot or builder 9 police officer, soldier, sailor, firefighter, pilot, doctor, vet

- 36.3** 2 A vet treats animals.
 3 An architect designs buildings.
 4 An electrician installs and repairs electrical things.
 5 A lawyer represents people with legal problems.
 6 A surgeon operates on people.
 7 A mechanic repairs cars.
 8 A dentist looks after people's teeth.
 9 An engineer plans the building of roads, bridges, etc.

- 36.4** 2 Really? When did he join the navy? 4 Really? When did she join the army?
 3 Really? When did he join the air force? 5 Really? When did he join the fire brigade?

36.5 Possible answers:

My father is an accountant.
I have an uncle who is a doctor, and another who is retired. (He is 63 and no longer works.)
The man next door is a police officer, and his wife is a teacher.
I have another neighbour who is a journalist.
I have a friend in the army, another friend who is training to be a doctor, and a third friend who is an electrician.

Unit 37

37.1 Words which are connected with money: earn, wages, salary, income

37.2 2 e 3 d 4 f 5 c 6 a

37.3 2 I work in marketing. 7 What do you do for a living?
3 I work for the government. 8 My job involves reading government reports.
4 My income is £22,000. 9 I give advice to clients.
5 What does your job involve? 10 I made a complaint about the service.
6 I'm in charge of the reception area.

37.4 2 runs / is in charge of 7 overtime 12 off
3 responsible 8 earn/make 13 advises
4 involves 9 conditions 14 dealing
5 day 10 tax 15 fixed
6 five 11 a 16 do/work

37.5 Your own answers

Unit 38

38.1 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 f 6 b

38.2

verb	noun	adjective
employ	(un)employment	(un)employed
promote	promotion	
retire	retirement	retired
resign	resignation	
succeed	success	successful
own	owner	

38.3 2 abroad 6 work 10 own
3 part time 7 succeed 11 own; success
4 quit; rise 8 apply 12 application
5 experience; courses 9 sack

38.4 Possible answers:

1 Yes, I was promoted to hotel manager last year.
2 I get a pay rise, but not always a good one.
3 Yes, I went on a computer course last year.
4 I would like to do a course on financial planning to help me with my current job.
5 I have never been given the sack, but I resigned from my last job when I was given the opportunity to work for my present employer.

Unit 39

39.1 2 rubbish bin 3 filing cabinet 4 paperwork 5 noticeboard

39.2 2 colleagues 3 calendar 4 diary 5 invoice 6 calculator 7 loads

- 39.3 2 arranged; appointment 4 attend / go to 6 involve; organise/arrange
3 run out 5 show (them) round
- 39.4 2 The photocopier isn't working. 5 We've run out of paper.
3 We've got loads of work today. 6 Why is he absent this morning?
4 I have to attend a meeting.

39.5 *Possible answer:*

In my job as a dentist, I have to do quite a lot of paperwork, I send a few emails, I attend a few meetings, and I never use a photocopier. I don't show people round, I don't have to organise events or type letters, and I don't send out invoices. The only things I repair are people's teeth.

Unit 40

40.1 Words which refer to people: expert, accountant, client, contacts

- 40.2 2 demand 5 employees 8 job
3 aim 6 set up 9 expanding
4 firm/business 7 headquarters 10 a great deal

- 40.3 2 take up 5 set up 8 take over
3 clients 6 customer 9 a former
4 ex- 7 currently

- 40.4 2 They achieved a lot / a great deal.
3 I have a lot of contacts in banking.
4 They were formerly (called) BMG.
5 It's always been my ambition to fly a plane.
6 She's an expert in finance.
7 The adverts attracted (a lot of) attention.

- 40.5 2 firm/business/company 4 branch 6 expanded
3 achieved/had 5 run 7 ambition/aim

Unit 41

- 41.1 2 by 3 from 4 of 5 in 6 in 7 of

- 41.2 2 a loan 3 interest 4 inflation 5 profit 6 trade 7 trend

- 41.3 1 loan; charges; interest; pay back. ANSWER €600
2 rate; % (per cent); pay back. ANSWER €575.

- 41.4 2 figures 6 sharp 10 quarters
3 increased / went up / rose 7 fall/decrease 11 risen / gone up
4 made 8 loss 12 sharply
5 raise/increase 9 stayed

41.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 About 2% 2 7-8% 3 Badly 4 2008-9 5 One British pound is 1.6 US dollars.

Unit 42

42.1

sport	person	place	verb	equipment
swimming, motor racing, basketball, skiing	golfer, athlete, goalkeeper, racing driver	court, track, pitch, rink	jump, box, race, sail	net, stick, skis, swimming costume

42.2 2 do 3 play 4 ski 5 did 6 go 7 do 8 keep 9 work out

42.3 2 swimming/swimmer 3 boxing/boxer 4 sailing/sailor 5 athletics/athlete

42.4 2 hockey 5 costumes 8 climbing
3 courses 6 racing 9 tent
4 fun/pleasure 7 fit 10 jogging

42.5 Possible answers:

- 1 In the winter I play football, and in the summer I play tennis and go swimming. It's not serious; I just do it for fun.
- 2 I watch a lot of sport on the TV: football, tennis, ice hockey, motor racing. In fact, I'll watch almost any sport if I have nothing else to do.

Unit 43

43.1 2 lose / lost / have lost
3 beat / beat / have beaten
4 draw / drew / have drawn
5 break / broke / have broken
6 give up / gave up / have given up

43.2 2 both are correct 4 tournament 6 beat
3 score 5 both are correct 7 competition

43.3 2 score; result (score is also possible) 7 league
3 beat/defeated 8 took
4 drew 9 leading
5 championship/tournament 10 against
6 record

43.4



43.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I've taken part in lots of competitions: football, cricket, rugby, swimming and athletics.
- 2 I won a cup competition at secondary school in football.
- 3 I was captain of the rugby team at secondary school.
- 4 I came first in a backstroke (swimming) race when I was at primary school, and at secondary school I won the 100 and 200 metres (athletics) on several occasions.
- 5 I've watched lots of finals on TV: the FA Cup, the World Cup, the UEFA Cup, Wimbledon, the French Open, the Olympics, and so on. I also went to Twickenham to see the rugby team I support in an important final of a cup competition. Unfortunately we lost.

Unit 44

- 44.1** across: literature, author, actor, fiction, novel, poetry, comedy
 down: poem, thriller, star, film, review
- 44.2** 2 ~~year~~ century 5 ~~article~~ review
 3 ~~past~~ future 6 ~~autobiography~~ biography
 4 ~~happening~~ on 7 ~~frightened~~ laugh; or ~~comedies~~ horror films
- 44.3** 2 entertainment 5 acting 8 director
 3 actors 6 entertainer
 4 poem 7 reviewer
- 44.4** 2 latest 4 (film) director 6 on 8 novel
 3 directed 5 complicated 7 comedies 9 fancy
- 44.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I don't read poetry but I read lots of novels. I enjoy thrillers and I like the English writer William Boyd.
- 2 Yes, I go to the cinema quite a lot. There are certain directors whose films I always see, but usually I go and see films that have had good reviews, or films that friends recommend.
- 3 I read reviews in the Sunday paper.
- 4 My favourite films are *Godfather* 1 and 2, and part of the reason I like them is that they have three of my favourite actors: Robert De Niro, Al Pacino and Marlon Brando.

Unit 45

- 45.1** 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 d
- 45.2** 2 single 3 album; comes 4 live 5 recorded 6 advertised
- 45.3** Suggested answers:
 Ballet is a form of dancing that tells a story to music.
 Audiences listen to concerts.
 Albums are made in a recording studio.
 The conductor stands in front of an orchestra.
 A composer is someone who writes classical music.
- 45.4** 2 orchestra; conductor 5 album 8 composer
 3 opera singers (tenors) 6 guitarist 9 operas
 4 single 7 cello 10 solo; Michael Jackson

- 45.5** 1 I like rock music, pop and R&B. My taste in music is very different from my parents – they hate rock music!
 2 My favourite artist is Beyoncé. I really like her song, *Single Ladies*.
 3 I bought Alicia Keys' latest album earlier this year.
 4 The last time I saw someone perform live was last year.
 5 I'm interested in both the tune and the lyrics.
 6 I play the guitar, but very badly!

Unit 46

- 46.1** 2 included 3 maximum 4 exciting 5 ships/boats 6 move/walk
- 46.2** 2 The children dress up.
 3 People come from all over Japan.
 4 The event is held every year.
 5 Do you celebrate your birthday? OR Do you do anything (special) to celebrate your birthday?
 6 The festival is an annual event.

- 46.3** 2 festival 5 celebrates 8 gather
 3 lasts 6 consists 9 Firework
 4 takes 7 spectacular

46.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 47

- 47.1** 2 excess baggage 6 duty free 10 cabin crew
 3 check-in desk 7 flight number 11 baggage reclaim
 4 hand luggage 8 overhead locker 12 passport control
 5 terminal building 9 boarding card
- 47.2** 2 passengers 5 destination 8 hand luggage
 3 luggage/suitcases 6 check your passport 9 runway
 4 boarding card 7 gate
- 47.3** 2 announcement 5 take off 8 landed
 3 delay 6 fasten 9 terminal
 4 boarded 7 crew 10 flight

47.4 *Possible answers:*

- The worst part of the flight for me is the take-off, and the best part is the landing because I'm just pleased when it's over. I don't like flying much.
- There are often delays in the winter when the weather is bad.
- I often think about the place I'm going to or the place I've just been to. Other than that, I read a book or watch a film. Occasionally I talk to the person sitting next to me.
- I try to get through customs quickly, so I can go home or start to enjoy my holiday!
- I never have anything to declare because I rarely buy things when I travel.

Unit 48

48.1

<i>steak</i>	<i>facilities</i>	<i>courses</i>	<i>water</i>
rare, medium, well-done	mini-bar, room service, safe	starter, main course, dessert	still, sparkling

- 48.2** 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 h 6 b 7 d 8 f

- 48.3** 2 reception 5 'll have 8 heart/centre
 3 double/twin 6 facilities 9 mixed; course
 4 service 7 tip 10 stay; check

- 48.4** 2 reservation 4 included (in the price) 6 parking
 3 available 5 advance 7 to order

48.5 *Possible answers:*

If I go to a hotel in my own country, I usually drive, so parking is very important. I also like to have satellite TV.

A restaurant is only important if there are no other good restaurants in the area.

A mini-bar and air conditioning are great if it's in the summer and it is quite hot.

I usually carry my money and credit cards with me, so I don't need a safe.

I never use room service or need internet access, so they're not important at all.

Unit 49

- 49.1** Religious places are: temple, cathedral, mosque

- 49.2** 2 sightseeing 4 packed 6 lost 8 go out
 3 attractions/sights 5 explore/visit 7 market

- 49.3 2 packed 4 great/lovely time 6 guidebook 8 magnificent
 3 plenty to do 5 worth seeing/visiting 7 monuments 9 look round

49.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 50

50.1 Any four of these: sunbathe, suntan, sunburn, sunscreen, sunblock, sun cream

50.2 2 c 3 e 4 a 5 f 6 b

50.3 2 sunbathing 3 surfing 4 diving 5 windsurfing

50.4 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 b

50.5 2 recommend 4 protection/shade 6 stroll/walk 8 go for / have
 3 risk 5 breeze 7 shade

50.6 *Possible answers:*

- 1 I go to seaside resorts in the south-west of England, and sometimes the south of France, or the coast of Spain near Barcelona. I usually go once or twice a year.
- 2 I go for a swim; that's all.
- 3 No, I don't like sunbathing. It's boring and I get sunburn easily.
- 4 No, I don't get a suntan easily and I have had sunburn in the past. I might use sunscreen on my face. I usually wear a T-shirt or sit in the shade if it is very hot.
- 5 I like to go for a drink and then have a meal.



Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/i:/	sleep me
/ɪ/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/ʊ/	casual
/u:/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ɔ:/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑ:/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear cheers
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

Consonant sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo surprise
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

ˈ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

ˌ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

Index

The numbers in the Index are **unit** numbers not page numbers.
The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

- a bit [slightly] ə bit 91
 a great deal ə greɪt di:l 40
 a laugh ə la:f 99
 a little (bit) ə 'lɪtəl 91
 a load of rubbish ə laʊd ɒv 'rʌbɪʃ 95
 a long time ago ə lɒŋ taɪm ə'gəʊ 59
 a paper ə 'peɪpə 100
 a piece of sth ə pi:əs ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 86
 a return ə rɪ'tɜ:n 29
 a week/month/year (etc.) [every] ə wi:k mʌnθ jɪə 37
 abbreviation ə,bri:v'i:ʃən 52
 ability ə'bɪləti 70
 able 'eɪbəl 70
 above ə'baʊ 90
 above all ə'baʊ ɔ:l 56
 abroad ə'brɔ:d 38
 absent 'æbsənt 39
 absolutely 'æbsə'lʊ:tli 89
 accent 'æksənt 34
 accept ək'sept 1
 access (to sth) 'ækses 48, 54
 accident 'æksɪdənt 30
 accommodation ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən 20
 according to ə'kɔ:diŋ tu: 51, 66
 accountant ə'kaʊntənt 36
 accurate(ly) 'ækjərət 34
 ache n, v eɪk 21
 achieve ə'tʃi:v 40
 achievement ə'tʃi:vmənt 40
 act [do sth] ækt 57
 act [perform] ækt 44
 acting 'æktɪŋ 44
 actor 'æktə 44, 70
 actually 'æktʃʊəli 99
 ad/advert æd'ædvɜ:t 100
 add æd 26
 add sth up æd 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 60
 add to basket/bag æd tu: 'bɑ:skɪt/bæɡ 54
 addition ə'dɪʃən 60
 adjective 'ædʒɪktɪv 4
 admin 'ædmɪn 37
 admission əd'mɪʃən 31
 adult 'ædʌlt 14
 advantage əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ 27
 adverb 'ædvɜ:b 4
 advert 'ædvɜ:t 45, 51, 100
 advertisement əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt 51
 advice əd'vaɪs 86
 advise əd'vaɪz 37, 88
 afford ə'fɔ:d 20
 afraid (of) ə'freɪd 77
 Africa 'æfrɪkə 5
 after [follow sb/sth] 'ɑ:ftə 90
 after [time/event] 'ɑ:ftə 92
 after that 'ɑ:ftə ðæt 92
 afterwards 'ɑ:ftəwədz 92
 against [compete] ə'genst 43
 against [touching] ə'genst 90
 ages 'eɪdʒɪz 99
 ages ago 'eɪdʒɪz ə'gəʊ 59
 agree [have the same opinion] ə'gri: 66, 77
 agree [say yes] ə'gri: 87
 aim eɪm 40
 air conditioning eə kən'dɪʃənɪŋ 17
 air force eə fɔ:s 36
 aircraft 'ækrɑ:ft 47, 73
 airline 'eəlaɪn 73
 airport 'eəpɔ:t 73
 alarm ə'la:m 74
 album 'ælbəm 45
 alive ə'laɪv 14
 all over [everywhere] ɔ:l 'əʊvə 19, 46
 all the best ɔ:l ðə best 99
 allow ə'laʊ 14
 almost ɔ:l'mɔ:st 14
 alone ə'ləʊn 15
 aloud ə'laʊd 1
 alphabet 'ælfəbet 34
 also ɔ:l'səʊ 93
 although ɔ:l'ðəʊ 93
 altogether ɔ:l'tə'geðə 13
 amazed ə'meɪzɪd 89
 amazing [very good] ə'meɪzɪŋ 89
 amazing [very surprising] ə'meɪzɪŋ 89
 ambition æm'bɪʃən 40
 American ə'merɪkən 5
 among ə'mʌŋ 90
 amount ə'maʊnt 3, 20
 and so on ænd səʊ ɒn 100
 anger 'æŋɡə 12
 angrily 'æŋɡrɪli 91
 ankle 'æŋkəl 9
 anniversary ,ænrɪ'vɜ:səri 15
 announcement ə'naʊntsmənt 47
 annoyed ə'nɔɪd 89
 annoying ə'nɔɪɪŋ 89
 annual 'ænjuəl 46, 71
 answerphone 'ɑ:nsəfəʊn 52
 ant ænt 8
 antique n æn'ti:k 62
 anti-virus software 'æntɪ 'vaɪrəs 'sɒftweə 53, 54
 anxiety æŋ'zaiəti 12
 anxious 'æŋkɪəs 12
 anyway [more importantly] 'eniweɪ 92
 anyway [returning to an earlier subject] 'eniweɪ 99
 apart from ə'pa:t frəm 75
 apartment ə'pɑ:tmənt 17
 apologise for sth ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 64, 98
 apology ə'pɒlədʒɪ 64
 appear [become visible] ə'pɪə 69
 appear [seem] ə'pɪə 85
 appearance ə'pɪərəns 10
 application (computer) ,æplɪ'keɪʃən 53
 application (job) ,æplɪ'keɪʃən 38, 98
 apply for sth ə'plai fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 38
 appointment ə'pɔɪntmənt 39
 approach ə'prəʊtʃ 30
 approximately ə'prɒksɪmətli 10, 14
 Arabic 'ærəbɪk 5
 architect 'ɑ:kɪtekt 35, 36
 architecture 'ɑ:kɪtektʃə 35
 Argentina ,ɑ:dʒən'ti:nə 5
 Argentinian ,ɑ:dʒən'tɪniən 5
 argue 'ɑ:gju: 1
 argument [angry discussion] 'ɑ:gjəmənt 1
 argument [reason to think] 'ɑ:gjəmənt 97
 armchair 'ɑ:mtʃeə 18
 army 'ɑ:mi 36, 58
 arrange ə'reɪndʒ 39
 arrangement ə'reɪndʒmənt 39
 arrest ə'rest 55
 arrival ə'raɪvəl 96
 article 'ɑ:tɪkəl 51
 artist 'ɑ:tɪst 70
 arts ɑ:ts 35
 as [because] æz 94
 as [when] æz 92
 as a result æz ə rɪ'zʌlt 94, 97
 as if/though æz ɪf ðəʊ 85
 as long as æz lɒŋ æz 94
 as soon as æz su:n æz 92
 as well (as) æz wel 93
 Asia 'eɪzə 5
 ask sb for sth ɑ:sk 'sʌmbɒdi fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 87
 ask sb the way ɑ:sk 'sʌmbɒdi ðə weɪ 30
 assistance ə'sɪstəns 95
 at [place] æt 90
 at [@] æt 54
 at all æt ɔ:l 66
 at first æt 'fɜ:st 14, 92
 at home æt həʊm 19
 at least æt li:st 1, 61
 at night æt naɪt 27
 at once æt wʌns 75

- at the end æt ði end 78
at the moment æt ðə 'məʊmənt 78
at the same time æt ðə seɪm taɪm 59
athlete 'æθli:t 42
athletic æθ'letɪk 10
athletics æθ'letɪks 42
atmosphere 'ætməsfɪə 24, 33
attachment ə'tætʃmənt 54
attack n ə'tæk 58
attack v ə'tæk 55
attempt n, v ə'tempt 72, 87
attend ə'tend 33, 39
attendance ə'tendəns 39
attitude 'ætɪtju:d 67
attract attention ə'trækt ə'tenfən 40
attraction ə'trækʃən 49
attractive ə'træktɪv 10
aubergine 'əʊbəʒi:n 25
audience 'ɔ:diəns 45
Australia ɔs'treɪliə 5
Australian ɔs'treɪliən 5
author 'ɔ:θə 44
available ə'veɪləbəl 48, 98
average [typical] 'ævərɪdʒ 10
avoid ə'vɔɪd 87
aware of ə'weə ɒv 77
away [distance] ə'weɪ 28, 29, 61
awful 'ɔ:fəl 89
babysitter 'beɪbɪ,sɪtə 73
back up sth bæk ʌp 'sʌməθɪŋ 53
backache 'bækək 21
backpack 'bækpæk 22
backup 'bækʌp 53
bag bæɡ 63
baggage reclaim 'bæɡɪdʒ rɪ'kleɪm 47
bakery 'beɪkəri 40
balcony 'bælkəni 17
bald bɔ:ld 84
ballet (dancer) 'bæleɪ 45
ballot 'bælət 56
bandage 'bændɪdʒ 21
bank (of a river) bæŋk 28
bank account bæŋk ə'kaʊnt 20
bank loan bæŋk ləʊn 20
bar (of chocolate) bɑ: 63
barbecue n, v 'bɑ:bɪk.ju: 26
basic 'beɪsɪk 34
basket 'bɑ:skɪt 24
bass guitar beɪs grɪ'tu: 45
bass guitarist beɪs grɪ'tu:ɪst 45
bath bɑ:θ 16
battle 'bætəl 58
BBC 'bi:bi:'si: 100
be (just) about to bi: ə'baʊt tu: 75
be delayed bi: dɪ'leɪd 64
be dying for sth bi: 'daɪɪŋ fɔ: 'sʌməθɪŋ 95
be held up bi: held ʌp 64
be in touch bi: ɪn tʌtʃ 99
be into sth [like sth] bi: 'ɪntə 'sʌməθɪŋ 67
beach bi:tʃ 50
beans bi:nz 25
bear beə 8
beat bi:t 43
beauty 'bju:ti 10
because bɪ'kɔ:z 94
because of bɪ'kɔ:z ɒv 94
bee bi: 8
beef bi:f 25
before [place] bɪ'fɔ: 90
before [time] bɪ'fɔ: 92
behave bɪ'heɪv 3
behaviour bɪ'heɪvjə 86
belief bɪ'li:f 56
believe [think] bɪ'li:v 97
believe in bɪ'li:v ɪn 56
bell bel 62
belong to bɪ'lɒŋ tu: 77
below bɪ'ləʊ 90
bend n, v bend 30
beneath bɪ'ni:θ 90
beside [next to] bɪ'saɪd 90
besides [giving another reason] bɪ'saɪdz 92
besides [in addition] bɪ'saɪdz 93
best friend best frend 13
best wishes best 'wɪʃɪz 99
beyond bɪ'jɒnd 90
bicycle 'baɪsɪkəl 29
bike baɪk 29, 100
billion 'bɪljən 60
bin bɪn 39, 86
biography baɪ'ɒgrəfi 44
birth bɜ:θ 14
birthday card 'bɜ:θdeɪ kɑ:d 73
(a) bit of sth bɪt ɒv 'sʌməθɪŋ 86
bitter 'bɪtə 26
blame sb for sth bleɪm 'sʌmbɒdi fɔ: 'sʌməθɪŋ 87
blanket 'blæŋkɪt 18
bleed bli:d 21
bless you bles ju: 68
blind blaɪnd 84
blinds blaɪndz 18
block of flats blɒk ɒv flæts 17
blog blɒɡ 54
blogger 'blɒɡə 54
bloke bləʊk 95
blonde blɒnd 10
blow v bləʊ 7
blow your nose bləʊ jɔ: nəʊz 9
board n, v bɔ:d 47
board [blackboard] n bɔ:d 100
boarding card 'bɔ:ɪdɪŋ kɑ:d 47
boil bɔɪl 26
boiling 'bɔɪlɪŋ 7
bomb bɒm 58
bone bəʊn 62
book v bʊk 48
boots bu:tɪz 22
bored bɔ:d 89
boring 'bɔ:ɪɪŋ 89
borrow 'bɒrəʊ 32
both sides of an argument bəʊθ saɪdz ɒv æn 'ɑ:ɡjʊmənt 97
bother 'bɒðə 16
bottle 'bɒtəl 63
bottom 'bɒtəm 9
bowl bəʊl 63
box bɒks 63
boxing 'bɒksɪŋ 42
bracelet 'breɪslət 22
brake n, v breɪk 30, 72
branch (of a company) brɑ:ntʃ 40
branch (of a tree) brɑ:ntʃ 28
Brazil brə'zɪl 5
Brazilian brə'zɪliən 5
break [rest] n breɪk 33
break a record breɪk ə'rekɔ:d 43
break down breɪk daʊn 39, 80
break in (to sth) breɪk ɪn 55, 80
break the rules breɪk ðə ru:lz 33
break up [end a relationship] breɪk ʌp 15
break up [end of term] breɪk ʌp 33
breast brest 9
breathe (in/out) bri:ð 9
breeze bri:z 50
brick brɪk 36
bride braɪd 15
(bride)groom grʊ:m 15
bridge brɪdʒ 30
briefly 'bri:flɪ 91
bright braɪt 22
bring sb luck brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi lʌk 46
bring sb up brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp 14
broad brɔ:d 10
broadcast 'brɔ:dkɑ:st 51
broccoli 'brɒkəli 25
broken down 'brəʊkən daʊn 39
browse braʊz 54
browser 'braʊzə 54
brush your teeth brʌʃ jɔ: ti:θ 16
bucket 'bʌkɪt 62
build bɪld 36
builder 'bɪldə 36
bull bʊl 8
bunch bʌntʃ 25, 63
burglar 'bɜ:ɡlə 55
burglary 'bɜ:ɡləri 55
burn v bɜ:n 19
burst into tears bɜ:st 'ɪntə tɪəz 75
bus bʌs 29
bus driver bʌs 'draɪvə 73
bus station bʌs 'steɪʃən 73
bus stop bʌs stɒp 29, 73
business studies 'bɪznɪs 'stʌdɪz 35
businessman/woman 'bɪznɪsmæn/'wʊmən 35
butterfly 'bʌtəflaɪ 8
button 'bʌtən 22
by [how much] baɪ 41
by [near] baɪ 90
by [next to] baɪ 90
by [not later than] baɪ 59
by accident baɪ 'æksɪdənt 78

- by chance baɪ tʃɑːns 78
 by hand baɪ hænd 78
 by mistake baɪ mɪ'steɪk 78
 by the way baɪ ðə weɪ 75
 cabbage 'kæbɪdʒ 25
 cabin crew 'kæbɪn kruː 47
 cage keɪdʒ 8
 calculate 'kælkjəleɪt 60
 calculation ,kælkjə'leɪʃən 60
 calculator 'kælkjəleɪtə 39, 60
 calendar 'kælɪndə 39
 calf kɑːf 25
 call [describe sb] kɔːl 33
 call [phone] kɔːl 52
 call for sb kɔːl fɔː 'sʌmbɒdi 80
 calm (person) kɑːm 11
 calm (sea) kɑːm 50
 camel 'kæməl 8
 camping 'kæmpɪŋ 42
 campsite 'kæmpsaɪt 73
 can (of cola) kæn 63
 can't help it kɑːnt help ɪt 76
 can't stand kɑːnt stænd 67
 canal kə'næl 6
 cancel 'kænsəl 64
 cancer 'kænsə 21
 candidate 'kændɪdət 34
 Cantonese ,kæntə'niːz 5
 cap kæp 22
 capital [city] 'kæpɪtəl 5
 capital letter 'kæpɪtəl 'letə 4
 captain 'kæptɪn 43
 car park kɑː pɑːk 27
 cardinal number 'kɑːdɪnəl
 'nʌmbə 60
 care keə 56
 career aim kə'riəreɪm 96
 careful 'keəfəl 71
 careless 'keələs 71
 Caribbean ,kæri'biːən 5
 caring 'keərɪŋ 12
 carpenter 'kɑːpɪntə 36
 carpet 'kɑːpɪt 18
 carrot 'kærət 25
 carry guns 'kæri ɡʌnz 58
 carry on (with sth) 'kæri ɒn 79
 carton 'kɑːtən 63
 case keɪs 100
 cash kæʃ 20
 cashpoint 'kæʃpɔɪnt 20, 73
 castle 'kɑːsəl 49
 casual 'kæʒjuəl 22
 catch (a bus/train) kætʃ 29
 catch (a criminal) kætʃ 55
 cathedral kə'θiːdrəl 49
 cause kɔːz 97
 cave keɪv 6
 CD player ,sɪ'diː 'pleɪə 32
 celebrate 'seləbreɪt 15, 46
 celebration ,selə'breɪʃən 15
 celebrity sə'lebrətɪ 51
 cellist 'tʃelɪst 45
 cello 'tʃeləʊ 45
 central heating 'sentrəl 'hiːtɪŋ
 17
 century 'sentʃəri 44, 59
 cereal 'sɪəriəl 16
 ceremony 'serɪməni 15
 certificate sə'tɪfɪkət 3, 35
 champion 'tʃæmpiən 43
 championship 'tʃæmpiənʃɪp
 43
 chance [opportunity] tʃɑːns
 86
 chance [possibility that sth will
 happen] tʃɑːns 86
 change into sth tʃeɪndʒ 'ɪntə
 'sʌmθɪŋ 22
 change your mind tʃeɪndʒ jɔː
 maɪnd 76
 changing room 'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ru:m
 23
 channel [TV] 'tʃænəl 51
 character [good qualities]
 'kærəktə 17
 character [personality] 'kærəktə
 11
 charge v tʃɑːdʒ 20, 41
 charming 'tʃɑːmɪŋ 17
 chat n, v tʃæt 16, 72
 chat show tʃæt ʃəʊ 51
 check [examine] tʃek 20, 47
 check out tʃek aʊt 48
 checkout [online
 shopping] 'tʃek aʊt 54
 checkout [supermarket]
 'tʃek aʊt 24
 check your email tʃek jɔːr
 'iːmeɪl 54
 check-in (desk) 'tʃekɪn 47
 cheek tʃiːk 9, 68
 cheerful 'tʃiːəfəl 12
 cheers [a toast] tʃiːəz 68
 cheers [goodbye] tʃiːəz 68
 cheers [thanks] tʃiːəz 64, 95
 chef ʃef 26
 chest tʃest 9
 chest of drawers tʃest ɒv drɔːz
 73
 childhood 'tʃaɪldhʊd 14
 chilly 'tʃɪli 7
 chin tʃɪn 9
 China 'tʃaɪnə 5
 Chinese tʃaɪ'niːz 5
 choice tʃɔɪs 18
 chop tʃɒp 26
 circle 'sɜːkəl 62
 classical music 'klæsɪkəl
 'mjuːzɪk 45
 clean kliːn 1, 27
 clean your teeth kliːn jɔː tiːθ
 16
 cleaner 'kliːnə 16
 clear (sky) klɪə 7
 clear sth up klɪə 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 19
 clever 'klevə 11
 click on (a link) klɪk ɒn 54
 client 'klaɪənt 40
 cliff klɪf 50
 climate 'klaɪmət 6
 climate change 'klaɪmət tʃeɪndʒ
 57
 close family kləʊs 'fæməli 13
 clothes kləʊðz 23
 cloud klaʊd 7
 cloudy 'klaʊdi 7
 coach kəʊtʃ 29
 coast kəʊst 50
 coconut 'kəʊkənət 25
 coin kɔɪn 20
 cold kəʊld 7
 collar 'kɒlə 22
 colleague 'kɒliːg 39
 colourful 'kɒləfəl 71
 comb your hair kəʊm jɔː heə 9
 come out [be available] kʌm
 aʊt 45, 51
 come out [sun] kʌm aʊt 7
 come round [visit] kʌm
 raʊnd 16
 comedy 'kɒmədi 44
 comfortable 'kʌmfətəbəl 71
 comma 'kɒmə 4
 commence kə'mens 95
 commit a crime kə'mɪt ə kraɪm
 55
 compare kəm'peə 97
 compared with/to kəm'peəd wɪð/
 tuː 97
 comparison kəm'pærɪsən 97
 competition ,kɒmpə'tɪʃən 43
 complain kəm'pleɪn 29, 37, 77
 complaint kəm'pleɪnt 29, 37
 completely kəm'pliːtli 91
 complicated 'kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd
 44, 96
 composer kəm'pəʊzə 45
 concentrate 'kɒnsəntreɪt 77
 conditions kən'dɪʃənz 37
 conductor kən'dʌktə 45
 confident 'kɒnfɪdənt 11
 confirm kən'fɜːm 98
 confused kən'fjuːzd 12, 89
 confusing kən'fjuːzɪŋ 89
 confusion kən'fjuːzən 12
 congratulations
 kən,grætʃu'leɪʃənz 68
 conjunction kən'dʒʌŋkʃən 4
 connect kə'nekt 54
 connected to/with kə'nektɪd tuː/
 wɪð 3
 consequently 'kɒnseqwəntli
 97
 consider kən'sɪdə 87
 consist of kən'sɪst ɒv 6, 46
 consonant 'kɒnsənənt 34
 constituency kən'stɪtjuːnsɪ 56
 consultant kən'sʌltənt 37
 contacts 'kɒntæktz 40
 container kən'teɪnə 63
 contents 'kɒntents 51, 63
 continent 'kɒntɪnənt 5
 contrast n 'kɒntrɑːst 6
 contrast v 'kɒn'trɑːst 97
 convenient kən'viːniənt 24, 29
 convince kən'vɪns 88
 cook n kʊk 26
 cooker 'kʊkə 18, 26
 cool kuːl 7
 copy 'kɒpi 53
 correct adj kə'rekt 69
 correct v kə'rekt 32
 cottage 'kɒtɪdʒ 17
 cotton 'kɒtən 62
 cough kɒf 21

- Could I speak to ...? kud aɪ spi:k tu: 52
 (I) could not believe my eyes kud nɒt br'i:lv maɪ aɪz 76
 Could you (possibly) ...? kud ju: 65
 countable (noun) 'kauntəbəl 4
 country of origin 'kʌntri ɒv 'brɪdʒɪn 96
 countryside 'kʌntrɪsaɪd 28
 couple [several] 'kʌpəl 15, 61, 63
 courgette kə:'zet 25
 course [sport] kɔ:s 42
 course (of a meal) kɔ:s 48
 court (of law) kɔ:t 55
 court [sport] kɔ:t 42
 cousin 'kʌzən 13
 cover v 'kʌvə 6
 crab kræb 25
 crash [computer] kræʃ 53
 crash into sth kræʃ 'ɪntə 'sʌmθɪŋ 30
 create kri'eɪt 53, 57
 creative kri'eɪtɪv 11, 12
 creature 'kri:tʃə 8
 credit card 'kredɪt kɑ:d 73
 crime kraɪm 55
 crime rate kraɪm reɪt 27
 criminal 'krɪmɪnəl 55
 crop krɒp 28
 crossroads 'krɒsrəʊdz 73
 crowded 'kraʊdɪd 27
 cry kraɪ 9
 cucumber 'kju:kʌmbə 25
 cultural 'kʌltʃərəl 27, 71
 culture 'kʌltʃə 27
 cup [sport] kʌp 3
 cupboard 'kʌbəd 18
 cure n, v kjuə 72
 curiosity ,kjuəri'nsəti 12
 curious 'kjuəriəs 12
 curly 'kɜ:li 10
 currency 'kʌrənsɪ 20
 current 'kʌrənt 13
 currently 'kʌrəntli 40
 cushion 'kʊʃən 18
 custom 'kʌstəm 46
 customary 'kʌstəməri 46
 customs 'kʌstəmz 47
 cut [computer] v kʌt 53
 cut [injure] v kʌt 21
 cut [reduce] v kʌt 56
 CV ,si:'vi: 38, 96, 100
 cycle 'saɪkəl 29
 cyclist 'saɪklɪst 29
 daily 'deɪli 1, 40, 51
 damage n, v 'dæmɪdʒ 30
 dangerous 'deɪndʒərəs 27
 dancer 'da:ntsə 70
 dark dɑ:k 17
 dark (hair) dɑ:k 10
 date [day] deɪt 2
 date [romantic meeting] deɪt 15
 date of arrival/departure deɪt ɒv ə'raɪvəl/dɪ'pɑ:tʃə 96
 date of birth deɪt ɒv bɜ:θ 96
 day after day deɪ 'ɑ:ftə deɪ 75
 day-to-day ,deɪtə'deɪ 37
 dead ded 1, 14, 58
 deaf def 84
 deal with di:l wɪð 37
 Dear Sir/Madam dɪə sɜ:/ 'mædəm 98
 death deθ 58
 decade 'dekeɪd 59
 decimal 'desɪməl 60
 decrease n 'di:kri:s 41
 decrease v di:'kri:s 41
 defeat n, v dɪ'fi:t 43
 defend dɪ'fend 58
 definite article 'defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkəl 4
 definition ,defɪ'nɪʃən 3
 degree [amount] dɪ'gri: 91
 degree [university] dɪ'gri: 35
 degree(s) [temperature] dɪ'gri: 6, 7
 delay dɪ'leɪ 47, 64, 98
 delete dɪ'li:t 54
 delicious dɪ'lɪʃəs 26, 89
 delighted dɪ'laɪtɪd 89
 deliver dɪ'lɪvə 40
 demand n dɪ'mɑ:nd 40
 demand v dɪ'mɑ:nd 87
 dentist 'dentɪst 36
 depart dɪ'pɑ:t 95
 departure dɪ'pɑ:tʃə 47
 departures board dɪ'pɑ:tʃəz bɔ:d 47
 depend (on sth) [not sure about sth] dɪ'pend 74, 77
 depend on sb [need sb to support you] dɪ'pend ɒn 'sʌmbɒdi 77
 deposit dɪ'pɒzɪt 20
 depressed dɪ'prest 12, 89
 depressing dɪ'presɪŋ 89
 depth depθ 61
 design dɪ'zain 36
 designer label dɪ'zainə 'leɪbəl 23
 despite dɪ'spaɪt 93
 dessert dɪ'zɜ:t 48
 destination ,destɪ'neɪʃən 47
 destroy dɪ'strɔɪ 57, 58
 details 'di:teɪlz 98
 detective dɪ'tektɪv 55
 develop dɪ'veləp 70
 development dɪ'veləpmənt 70
 dial 'daɪəl 52
 dialling code 'daɪəlɪŋ kəʊd 52
 diary 'daɪəri 39
 die daɪ 58
 diet [lose weight] n, v 'daɪət 72
 different from 'dɪfərənt frɒm 77
 direct (a film) dɪ'rekt 44
 direct sb dɪ'rekt 'sʌmbɒdi 30
 directing dɪ'rektɪŋ 44
 director (of a company) dɪ'rektə 70
 director (of a film) dɪ'rektə 44
 dirty 'dɜ:ti 1, 27
 disadvantage ,dɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ 27
 disagree ,dɪsə'gri: 66, 69
 disappear ,dɪsə'pɪə 69
 disappointed ,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd 12, 89
 disappointing ,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ 89
 disappointment ,dɪsə'pɔɪntmənt 12
 disc jockey (DJ) dɪsk 'dʒɒki 73
 discuss dɪ'skʌs 70
 discussion dɪ'skʌʃən 70
 disease dɪ'zi:z 21
 dishonest dɪ'sɒnɪst 11, 69
 dislike n, v dɪ'slaɪk 67
 display dɪ'spleɪ 46
 distance 'dɪstəns 6, 61
 disturb dɪ'stɜ:b 31
 dive n, v daɪv 72
 divide [maths] dɪ'vaɪd 60
 divide [separate] dɪ'vaɪd 33
 diving 'daɪvɪŋ 50
 division dɪ'vɪʒən 60
 divorce dɪ'vɔ:s 15
 DJ (disc jockey) ,dɪ:'dʒeɪ 73
 do [study] du: 33
 do a bit/lot of (sightseeing/hiking etc.) du: ə bɪt/lɒt ɒv 42, 49
 do a course du: ə kɔ:s 81
 do an Internet search du: æn 'ɪntənət sɜ:tʃ 54
 do exercise du: 'eksəsaɪz 42, 81
 do homework du: 'həʊmwɜ:k 81
 do housework du: 'həʊswɜ:k 16, 81
 do not leave bags unattended du: nɒt li:v bægz ,ʌnə'tendɪd 31
 do research du: rɪ'sɜ:tʃ 35
 do something/nothing du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 'nʌθɪŋ 81
 do sth up du: 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 22
 do the shopping du: ðə 'ʃɒpɪŋ 16
 do the washing/ironing (etc.) du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ/'aɪəɪnɪŋ 16
 do well du: wel 34
 do your best du: jɔ: best 34, 81
 do your hair/make-up du: jɔ: heə/meɪk ʌp 81
 do/work overtime du:wɜ:k 'əʊvətaɪm 37
 do/write an essay du:/raɪt æn 'eseɪ 34
 document 'dɒkjəmənt 53
 documentary ,dɒkjə'mentəri 51
 dolphin 'dɒlfɪn 8
 don't worry dəʊnt 'wʌrɪ 64
 donkey 'dɒŋki 8
 dot (in an email address) dɒt 54
 double (double four nine) 'dʌbəl 60
 double room 'dʌbəl ru:m 48
 double-click ,dʌbəl'klɪk 53
 down [further along] daʊn 61
 down [to a lower place] daʊn 90

download ,daʊn'ləʊd 45, 54
 downstairs ,daʊn'steəz 17
 dozen 'dɒzən 63
 Dr 'drɒktə 100
 draw (a game) n, v drɔ: 43
 draw (pictures) drɔ: 2
 dreadful 'dredfəl 89
 dream n, v dri:m 72
 dress v dres 23, 33
 dress in dres in 23
 dress up dres ʌp 46
 drop v drɒp 19
 drop (of milk) drɒp 63
 drought draʊt 57
 drummer 'drʌmə 45
 drums drʌmz 45
 due to dju: tu: 94
 dull dʌl 27
 during 'djʊərɪŋ 59
 duty free 'dju:ti fri: 47
 duvet 'du:vet 18
 e.g. i:'dʒi: 100
 early (20s/30s, etc.) 'ɜ:li 14
 earn ɜ:n 20, 37
 earrings 'ɛərɪŋz 22, 73
 east i:st 6
 Earth [planet] ɜ:θ 6
 eat in/out i:t in aʊt 16
 economics ,i:kə'nɒmɪks 35
 economist i'kɒnəmɪst 35, 70
 economy i'kɒnəmi 41
 effect i'fekt 12, 57, 97
 efficient i'fɪʃənt 57
 Egypt 'i:dʒɪpt 5
 Egyptian i'dʒɪptʃən 5
 elbow 'elbəʊ 9
 elder 'eldə 13
 elderly 'eldəli 14, 56
 elect i'lekt 56
 election i'lektʃən 56
 electrical i'lektɪkəl 71
 electrician ,ɪlekt'rɪʃən 36
 elephant 'elɪfənt 8
 embarrassed ɪm'bærəst 89
 embarrassing ɪm'bærəsɪŋ 89
 emergency i'mɜ:dʒənsi 52
 emergency services i'mɜ:dʒənsi
 'sɜ:vɪsɪz 36
 emotion i'məʊʃən 12
 emotional i'məʊʃənəl 12
 emphasise 'emfəsaɪz 3
 employ sb ɪm'plɔɪ 'sʌmbɒdi 38
 employee ɪm'plɔɪi: 40
 en suite ,ɒn'swi:t 18
 enclose ɪn'kləʊz 98
 encourage ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ 88
 endangered animals
 ɪn'deɪndʒəd 'æniməlz 8
 end up ɛnd ʌp 30
 enemy 'enəmi 58
 energetic ,enə'dʒetɪk 12
 energy 'enədʒi 57
 engaged [busy] ɪn'geɪdʒd 52
 engagement ɪn'geɪdʒmənt 15
 engineer ,endʒɪ'nɪə 36
 engineering ,endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ 35
 English 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ 5
 enjoy (+ -ing) ɪn'dʒɔɪ 87

enjoyable ɪn'dʒɔɪəbəl 71
 enormous i'nɔ:məs 61, 89
 enquire about sth ɪn'kwɪəə
 ə'baʊt 'sʌmθɪŋ 98
 enrolment form ɪn'rɔʊlmənt
 fɔ:m 96
 enter (a password) 'entə 53
 entertain ,entə'teɪn 44
 entertainer ,entə'teɪnə 44
 entertainment ,entə'teɪnmənt
 44
 entrance 'entrəns 24
 entry form 'entri fɔ:m 96
 environment ɪn'vaɪrənmənt 57
 e-paper i:'peɪpə 51
 equal adj 'i:kwəl 56
 equals v 'i:kwəlz 60
 equipment i'kwɪpmənt 86
 escape i'skeɪp 55
 essay 'eseɪ 35
 essential i'senʃəl 54, 89
 etc. et 'setərə 100
 EU ,i:'ju: 100
 Europe 'jʊərəp 5
 even though 'i:vən ðəʊ 93
 eventually i'ventʃuəli 92
 ever since i'veə sɪns 13
 exam ɪg'zæm 100
 except for ɪk'sept fɔ: 75
 excess baggage ɪk'ses
 'bæɡɪdʒ 47
 excessive ɪk'sesɪv 57
 excuse n ɪk'skju:s 64
 excuse me [attract
 attention] ɪk'skju:z mi: 68
 excuse me [say sorry] ɪk'skju:z
 mi: 64
 ex-girlfriend/wife (etc.) eks
 'gɜ:lfrɛnd/waɪf 13
 exhausted ɪg'zɔ:stɪd 27, 89
 exist ɪg'zɪst 57
 existence ɪg'zɪstəns 57
 existing ɪg'zɪstɪŋ 53
 exit (stop using an application)
 v ɪk'sɪt 53
 expand ɪk'spænd 40
 expect ɪk'spekt 88
 expecting a baby ɪk'spektɪŋ ə
 'beɪbi 74
 experience [knowledge]
 ɪk'spɪəriəns 38, 86
 experience [sth that happens to
 you] ɪk'spɪəriəns 86
 experiment v ɪk'sperɪmənt
 34
 expert 'ekspɜ:t 40
 explain ɪk'spleɪn 32
 explain the difference between X
 and Y ɪk'spleɪn ðə 'dɪfərəns
 bɪ'twi:n eks ænd waɪ 32
 explanation ,eksplə'neɪʃən
 2, 32
 explode ɪk'spləʊd 58
 explore ɪk'splɔ: 49
 extremely ɪk'stri:mli 7, 91
 facilities fə'sɪlətɪz 48
 fail (an exam) v feɪl 34
 fair [equal] feə 56

fair [hair] feə 10
 fairly 'feəli 91
 fall n, v fɔ:l 41
 fall asleep fɔ:l ə'sli:p 16
 fall in love fɔ:l ɪn lʌv 74
 fall over fɔ:l ə'ʊvə 19, 79
 famous feɪməs 71
 fancy (doing) sth 'fænsɪ 'sʌmθɪŋ
 44, 65, 99
 FAQs ,efeɪ'kju:z 53
 Far East ,fɑ:r 'i:st 5
 fare feə 29
 farewell ,feə'wel 68
 farmhouse 'fɑ:mhaʊs 28
 farming 'fɑ:mɪŋ 28
 fascinating 'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ 89
 fashionable 'fæʃənəbəl 71
 fast asleep fɔ:st ə'sli:p 74
 fasten 'fɑ:sən 47
 fear n fiə 41
 fee(s) fi: 20
 feed fi:d 16, 31
 feel [believe] fi:l 66
 feel [experience] n, v fi:l 85
 feel bad about sth fi:l bæd ə'baʊt
 'sʌmθɪŋ 76
 feel sick fi:l sɪk 21
 feelings 'fi:lɪŋz 12
 feet [measurement] fi:t 61
 female 'fi:meɪl 33, 68
 fence fens 28
 festival 'festɪvəl 46
 fiction 'fɪkʃən 44
 field fi:ld 28
 fifty-pence piece 'fɪftɪ pens pi:s
 20
 fight faɪt 58
 figures (number) 'fɪɡəz 41
 file (computer) faɪl 53
 file menu faɪl 'menju: 53
 files faɪlz 39
 filing cabinet 'faɪlɪŋ 'kæbɪnət
 39
 fill sth in fɪl 'sʌmθɪŋ ɪn 96
 film director fɪlm dɪ'rektə 44
 film-maker fɪlm 'meɪkə 73
 filthy 'fɪlθi 1
 final n 'faɪnəl 43
 finally 'faɪnəli 92
 find out faɪnd aʊt 79
 fine n faɪn 55
 fire brigade faɪə brɪ'geɪd 36
 fireman/firefighter 'faɪəmən
 'faɪəfaɪtə 36
 fireworks 'faɪəwɜ:ks 46
 firm adj fɜ:m 18
 firm n fɜ:m 40
 first language fɜ:st 'læŋɡwɪdʒ
 5
 first of all fɜ:st ɒv ɔ:l 92
 first(ly) fɜ:st 92
 fit adj fɪt 70
 fit v fɪt 23
 fitness 'fɪtnəs 70
 fix fɪks 36
 fixed (hours) fɪkst 37
 flag flæg 62
 flat n flæt 17

- flautist 'flaʊtɪst 45
flavour 'fleɪvə 26
flight flait 29
flight number flait 'nʌmbə 47
flood flʌd 57
floor flɔː 18
flu fluː 21, 100
fluent 'fluːənt 34
flute fluːt 45
fly n flai 8
fly v flai 29
fog fɒg 7
foggy 'fɒgi 7
fold your arms fəʊld ʤɔːr ɑːmz 9
folk music fəʊk 'mjuːzɪk 45
footballer 'fʊtbɔːlə 70
footpath 'fʊtpɑːθ 28
for fɔː 59
for a start fɔːr ə stɑːt 92
for ages fɔːr 'eɪdʒɪz 59
for example fɔːr ɪg'zɑːmpəl 100
for fun fɔː fʌn 42
for instance fɔːr ɪnstəns 75
for one thing fɔː wʌn θɪŋ 92
for pleasure fɔː 'pleʒə 42
for the time being fɔː ðə taɪm 'biːɪŋ 59
forehead 'fɔːhed 9
forget fə'get 2, 19
former 'fɔːmə 40
fortnight 'fɔːtnaɪt 59
fortunately 'fɔːtʃənətli 16
forum 'fɔːrəm 51
fossil fuel 'fɒsəl 'fjuːəl 57
fountain 'faʊntɪn 49
fraction 'frækʃən 60
fragile 'frædʒaɪl 31
France frɑːns 5
freezing 'friːzɪŋ 7
French frenʃ 5
frequency 'friːkwəntsi 91
frequently 'friːkwəntli 91
fresh freʃ 24
fresh air freʃ ə 28
fridge frɪdʒ 100
fridge/freezer frɪdʒ 'friːzə 18
friendly 'frendli 11
friendship 'frendʃɪp 13
frightened 'fraɪtənd 12
frog frɒg 8
fry fraɪ 26
frying pan 'fraɪɪŋ pæn 26
full stop fʊl stɒp 4, 73
full-time 'fʊl'taɪm 38
fully-booked 'fʊli bukt 48
fur fɜː 62
furniture 'fɜːnɪtʃə 86
garlic 'gɑːlɪk 25
gate geɪt 28
gate (3/5/10, etc.) (airport) geɪt 47
gather 'gæðə 46
general election 'dʒenərəl ɪ'lektʃən 56
generalisation 'dʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃən 97
generation ,dʒenə'reɪʃən 40
generous 'dʒenərəs 11
German 'dʒɜːmən 5
Germany 'dʒɜːməni 5
get [answer] get 83
get [arrive] get 83
get [become] get 83
get [do a task] get 83
get [fetch] get 83
get a job get ə dʒɒb 33
get away [escape] get ə'wei 55, 58
get better get 'betə 83
get divorced get dɪ'vɔːst 15
get dressed get drest 22, 69
get engaged get ɪn'geɪdʒd 15
get in [arrive] get ɪn 80, 83
get in [enter] get ɪn 29, 83
get in touch get ɪn tʌtʃ 83
get into trouble get ɪntə'trʌbəl 33
get lost get lɒst 30, 49
get married to sb get 'mæriɪd tuː 'sʌmbɒdi 13, 15
get off (a bus) get ɒf 29
get on (a bus) get ɒn 29
get on (with sb) get ɒn 13, 79
get out [leave] get aʊt 29, 83
get over sth get əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ 80
get rid of sth get rɪd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 75, 83
get sth back get 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk 83
get sth done get 'sʌmθɪŋ dʌn 83
get sth wrong get 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ 34, 83
get stuck get stʌk 27, 60
get through [make contact] get θruː 52
get through sth [finish] get θruː 'sʌmθɪŋ 34
get to know sb get tuː nəʊ 'sʌmbɒdi 13, 15, 83
get to sleep get tuː sliːp 83
get together get tə'geðə 83, 99
get undressed get ʌn'drest 69
get up get ʌp 16
get used to sth get juːst tuː 'sʌmθɪŋ 67
get worse get wɜːs 19, 83
giant 'dʒaɪənt 61
giraffe dʒɪ'rɑːf 8
give [cause an effect] ɪv 82
give a speech/lecture (etc.) ɪv ə spiːtʃ/'lektʃə 82
give my regards/love to ... ɪv maɪ rɪ'gɑːdz/lʌv tuː 99
give sb advice ɪv 'sʌmbɒdi əd'vaɪs 37
give sb a hand ɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə hænd 82
give sb a hug ɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə hʌg 82
give sb a kiss ɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə kɪs 72
give sb a ring ɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə rɪŋ 52, 72, 82
give sb a shock ɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə ʃɒk 82
give sb the sack ɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ðə sæk 38
give sth away ɪv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'wei 79
give sth a push ɪv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə pʊʃ 82
give up (sth) [stop doing an activity] ɪv ʌp 43, 79
give up sth [leave a job] ɪv ʌp 'sʌmθɪŋ 15
global warming 'glɔːbəl 'wɔːmɪŋ 57
go [disappear] ɡəʊ 84
go [lead somewhere] ɡəʊ 84
go (out) for a walk/drive (etc.) ɡəʊ fɔːr ə wɔːk/draɪv 84
go (swimming/shopping, etc.) ɡəʊ 16, 42, 84
go and get [fetch] ɡəʊ ənd get 83, 84
go away [go on holiday] ɡəʊ ə'wei 79, 84
go away [leave] ɡəʊ ə'wei 79
go back ɡəʊ bæk 79, 84
go by bike/car (etc.) ɡəʊ baɪ/bɑːk kɑː 29
go down ɡəʊ daʊn 41
go for [choose] ɡəʊ fɔː 84
go for (a swim/drive, etc.) ɡəʊ fɔː 50, 84
go grey/bald/deaf (etc.) ɡəʊ greɪ/ bɔːld/def 84
go into business ɡəʊ ɪntə'biznɪs 35
go mad [become angry] ɡəʊ məd 84
go off [electricity] ɡəʊ ɒf 79
go off [explode] ɡəʊ ɒf 79
go off [go bad] ɡəʊ ɒf 79
go off [ring] ɡəʊ ɒf 79
go on [happen] ɡəʊ ɒn 27, 84
go on (to do sth) ɡəʊ ɒn 33, 35
go on a diet ɡəʊ ɒn ə 'daɪət 72, 74
go online ɡəʊ ɒn'laɪn 54
go out [social activity] ɡəʊ aʊt 16, 49
go out [stop working] ɡəʊ aʊt 84
go out with sb ɡəʊ aʊt wɪð 'sʌmbɒdi 15
go sightseeing ɡəʊ 'saɪtsiːɪŋ 49
go through ɡəʊ θruː 47
go to bed ɡəʊ tuː bed 16
go to sleep ɡəʊ tuː sliːp 16
go up ɡəʊ ʌp 41
go well/badly ɡəʊ wel/'bædli 84
go with sth ɡəʊ wɪð 'sʌmθɪŋ 23
go wrong ɡəʊ rɒŋ 15, 84
goalkeeper 'ɡəʊl,kiːpə 42
goat ɡəʊt 8
golf course ɡɒlf kɔːrs 42
good luck ɡʊd lʌk 68
good/bad at sth ɡʊd/bæd æt 'sʌmθɪŋ 26, 77
good-looking ɡʊd'lʊkɪŋ 10
gorgeous 'ɡɔːdʒəs 10
govern 'ɡʌvən 70

- government 'gʌvənmənt 56, 70
 GP 'dʒi:'pi: 36
 grade greɪd 34, 35
 gradual(ly) 'grædʒuəl 41
 graduate n 'grædʒuət 35, 98
 grant [allow] grɑ:nt 95
 grapes greɪps 25
 grass grɑ:s 28
 great greɪt 95
 great fun greɪt fʌn 74
 great importance greɪt ɪm'pɔ:tənts 74
 Greece gri:s 5
 Greek gri:k 5
 greenhouse effect 'gri:nhaʊs rɪ'fekt 57
 greenhouse gases 'gri:nhaʊs 'gæsɪz 57
 greet gri:t 68
 greeting 'gri:tɪŋ 68
 grey greɪ 62
 grill n, v grɪl 26
 ground graʊnd 28
 growing 'grəʊɪŋ 40, 41
 guess n, v ges 3, 72
 guidebook 'gaɪdbʊk 49
 guilty 'gɪlti 55
 guitar gi'tɑ: 45
 guitarist gi'tɑ:rɪst 45
 gun ɡʌn 36, 58
 gym dʒɪm 42, 100
 haggle 'hægl̩ 24
 haircut 'heəkʌt 73
 hairdresser 'heə,dresə 73
 hairdryer 'heə,draɪə 73
 half ha:f 60
 half a dozen ha:f ə 'dʌzən 63
 hand luggage hænd 'lʌgɪdʒ 47
 hand sth out hænd 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 80
 handle v 'hændəl 37
 handsome 'hænsəm 10
 handwriting 'hænd,raɪtɪŋ 96
 hang around hæŋ ə'raʊnd 80
 happiness 'hæpməs 70
 harbour 'hɑ:bə 46
 hard drive/disk hɑ:d draɪv/dɪsk 53
 hard work hɑ:d wɜ:k 34
 hardly ever 'hɑ:dli 'evə 91
 hard-working ,hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ 11
 hate heɪt 67, 87
 have a (swim/drink, etc.) hæv ə 50
 have a good ear for language hæv ə ɡʊd ɪə fɔ: 'læŋgwɪdʒ 34
 have a great/nice/terrible time hæv ə greɪt/najs/'terəbəl taɪm 49
 have a look hæv ə lʊk 81
 have a look round hæv ə lʊk raʊnd 49
 have a wash/shower etc. hæv ə wɒʃ/ʃaʊə 16, 81
 have a word with sb hæv ə wɜ:d wɪð 'sʌmbɒdi 76
 have an early night hæv ən 'ɜ:li naɪt 16
 have children hæv 'tʃɪldrən 74
 have got sth on hæv ɡɒt 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 23
 have no idea hæv nəʊ aɪ'dɪə 76
 have something/nothing in common hæv 'sʌmθɪŋ/'nʌθɪŋ ɪn 'kɒmən 67
 have time for sth hæv taɪm fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 59
 headache 'hedeɪk 21
 headline 'hedlɑ:m 51
 headquarters ,hed'kwɔ:təz 40
 hear hɪə 85
 heart [in the body] hɑ:t 21
 heart of somewhere hɑ:t ɒv 'sʌmwɛə 48, 58
 heart attack hɑ:t ə'tæk 21
 heat v hi:t 17
 heavy (rain) 'hevi 7
 heavy (traffic) 'hevi 74
 Hebrew 'hi:brʊ: 5
 heel hi:l 9
 height haɪt 10, 61
 held [organised] held 46
 help help 88
 helpful 'helpfəl 71
 hen hen 25
 hi haɪ 99
 hide haɪd 58
 high (mountain) haɪ 61
 highlight 'haɪlaɪt 32
 highlighter pen 'haɪ,laɪtə pen 1, 32
 hill hɪl 28
 hips hɪps 9
 hire 'haɪə 20
 historic monument hɪ'stɔ:rɪk 'mɒnjəmənt 49
 hit hit 19, 55
 hold an election həʊld ən ɪ'leɪʃən 56
 hold on [wait] həʊld ɒn 80
 hold-up həʊld ʌp 64
 honest 'ɒnɪst 11, 69
 honeymoon 'hʌnɪmu:n 15
 hope that ... həʊp ðæt 88
 hope to do sth həʊp tu: du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 87, 99
 hopeful 'həʊpfəl 12
 hopeless 'həʊpləs 19, 28
 horrible 'hɒrəbəl 26
 horror film 'hɒrə fɪlm 44
 housework 'haʊswɜ:k 16
 How about ...? [making a suggestion] həʊ ə'baʊt 65, 68
 How about you? [asking sb sth] həʊ ə'baʊt ju: 68
 How are things? həʊ ə: θɪŋz 68
 How do you feel about ...? həʊ du: ju: fi:l ə'baʊt 66
 How long/wide (etc.) is ...? həʊ lɒŋ/waɪd x ɪz 61
 How's it going? həʊz ɪt 'gəʊɪŋ 68
 however haʊ'evə 93, 97
 hug hʌg 82
 huge hju:dʒ 61, 89
 humid 'hju:mɪd 7
 hundred 'hʌndrəd 60
 hurry (up) 'hʌrɪ 79
 hurt v hɜ:t 21
 I am pleased to inform you ... aɪ æm plɪzɪd tu: mɪ'fɔ:m ju: 98
 I am writing in response to ... aɪ ,æm 'raɪtɪŋ ɪn rɪ'spɒns tu: 98
 I am writing to ... aɪ æm 'raɪtɪŋ tu: 98
 I beg your pardon aɪ beg ʒɔ: 'pɔ:dən 64
 I bet aɪ bet 95
 I don't believe it aɪ dəʊnt brɪ'li:v ɪt 76
 I don't fancy that aɪ dəʊnt 'fænsɪ ðæt 65
 I don't mind aɪ dəʊnt maɪnd 65
 I look forward to hearing from you aɪ lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tu: 'hɪəriŋ frɒm ju: 98
 I must apologise for ... aɪ mʌst ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔ: 64
 I regret to inform you ... aɪ rɪ'ɡret tu: mɪ'fɔ:m ju: 98
 I see what you mean aɪ si: wɒt ju: mi:n 66
 I suppose so aɪ sə'pəʊz səʊ 76
 I was wondering if you could ... aɪ wɒz 'wʌndərɪŋ ɪf ju: kʊd 65
 I wonder if you could ... aɪ 'wʌndər ɪf ju: kʊd 65
 I would be grateful if you could ... aɪ wʊd bi: 'ɡreɪtful ɪf ju: kʊd 98
 i.e. aɪ'i: 100
 I'd rather ... aɪd 'rɑ:ðə 65
 I'll have (chicken/fish, etc.) aɪl hæv 48
 I'll leave it aɪl li:v ɪt 23
 I'll take it aɪl teɪk ɪt 23
 I'm afraid I can't aɪm ə'freɪd aɪ kɑ:nt 65
 I'm being served aɪm 'bi:ŋ sɜ:vɪd 23
 I'm looking for ... aɪm 'lʊkɪŋ fɔ: 23
 I'm sorry aɪm 'sɔ:ri 64
 I'm sorry I'm late aɪm 'sɔ:ri aɪm leɪt 64
 ice aɪs 7
 ice hockey aɪs 'hɒki 42, 73
 icon 'aɪkɒn 53
 icy 'aɪsi 7
 ID aɪ'di: 100
 ID card aɪ'di: kɑ:rd 73
 if I were you ɪf aɪ wɜ: ju: 75
 if you like ɪf ju: laɪk 65
 ill ɪl 70
 illegal ɪ'li:ɡəl 69
 illness 'ɪlnəs 21, 70
 image 'ɪmɪdʒ 40
 imagine ɪ'mædʒɪn 87
 immediately ɪ'mi:diətli 54
 impatient ɪm'peɪʃənt 11
 improve ɪm'pru:v 70
 improvement ɪm'pru:vmənt 70

- in [place] in 90
in a bad mood in ə bəd mu:d 19
in a hurry in ə 'hʌrɪ 27, 78
in a moment in ə 'mɒmənt 78
in a row in ə rəʊ 41
in a week's/month's (etc.) time in ə wi:k/s'mʌntθs taɪm 59, 75, 99
in addition (to) in ə'dɪʃən 93
in advance in əd'vʌns 48
in black/blue/brown (etc.) in blæk/blu:/braʊn 22
in business in 'bɪznɪs 78
in case in keɪs 94
in charge of in tʃɑ:dʒ əv 37
in contrast in 'kɒntrəst 97
in detail in 'di:teɪl 78
in fact in fækt 99
in fashion in 'fæʃən 23
in future in 'fju:tʃə 78
in general in 'dʒenərəl 75, 97
in large quantities in lu:dʒ 'kwɒntətɪz 63
in love in lʌv 15
in my opinion in maɪ ə'pɪnjən 66
in order to in 'ɔ:də tu: 94
in other words in 'ʌðə wɜ:dz 100
in progress in 'prɒgres 31
in response to in rɪ'spɒns tu: 98
in spite of in spaɪt əv 93
in tears in tiəz 78
in that case in ðæt keɪs 76
in the end in ði end 14, 78, 92
in the past in ðə pɑ:st 33, 97
in the wild in ðə waɪld 8
in the world in ðə wɜ:ld 6
in time in taɪm 59, 78
in writing in 'raɪtɪŋ 98
inability in'æbɪlətɪ 70
inch ɪntʃ 61
include ɪn'klu:d 48
income 'ɪŋkʌm 37
income tax 'ɪŋkʌm tæks 37, 73
incorrect ɪn'kɔr'ekt 69
increase n 'ɪnkri:s 34, 41
increase v 'ɪnkri:s 41
incredible ɪn'kredɪbəl 43
incredibly ɪn'kredɪbli 91
indefinite article ɪn'defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkəl 4
individual ɪndɪ'vɪdʒʊəl 43
inflation ɪn'fleɪʃən 41
ingredients ɪn'grɪ:diənts 26
injure ɪndʒə 30
injury ɪndʒəri 30
innocent ɪnəsənt 55
insect ɪnsekt 8
inside lane ɪnsaɪd leɪn 30
insist on doing sth ɪn'sɪst ɒn 'du:ɪŋ 'sʌmθɪŋ 87
install ɪn'stɔ:l 36, 53
instant messaging ɪnstənt 'mesɪdʒɪŋ 54
instead ɪn'sted 16
intelligent ɪn'telɪdʒənt 11
intend ɪn'tend 87
interest n ɪn'trəst 41
interest v ɪn'trəst 67
interest rate ɪn'trəst reɪt 41
interested in ɪn'trəstɪd ɪn 67, 77
interests ɪn'trəsts 67, 96
internet access ɪntənət 'ækses 48
interrupt ɪntə'rʌpt 64
interview ɪntə'vju: 38
into ɪntə 90
introduce sb ɪn'trə'dju:s 'sʌmbɒdi 68
invent ɪn'vent 70, 80
invention ɪn'venʃən 70
invoice ɪn'vɔɪs 39
involve ɪn'vɒlv 39, 46
ironing ɪə'ɒnɪŋ 16
irregular ɪ'regjələ 69
irregular (verb) ɪ'regjələ 4
Is that (Joe, Emma, etc ...?) ɪz ðæt 52
-ish ɪʃ 10
ISP ɪs'pi: 54, 100
Israel ɪz'reɪl 5
Israeli ɪz'reɪli 5
it/that depends ɪt/ðæt dɪ'pendz 76
it seems to me ɪt si:mz tu: mi: 97
Italian ɪ'tæliən 5
Italy ɪ'tæli 5
item ɪtəm 24, 54
jail dʒeɪl 55
Japan dʒə'pæn 5
Japanese ˌdʒæpə'ni:z 5
jar dʒɑ: 63
jealous ˌdʒeləs 12
jealousy ˌdʒeləsi 12
jogging ˌdʒɒŋɪŋ 42
join [become a member] dʒɔɪn 36
join [do sth with others] dʒɔɪn 99
journalist ˌdʒɜ:nəlɪst 51
journey ˌdʒɜ:ni 29
judge dʒʌdʒ 55
jug dʒʌg 63
jumper ˌdʒʌmpə 22
junction ˌdʒʌŋkʃən 30
junk mail dʒʌŋk meɪl 54
jury ˌdʒuəri 55
just as dʒʌst æz 92
keen on ki:n ɒn 67
keep [look after] ki:p 28
keep [stay in a place/condition] ki:p 82
keep (on) doing sth ki:p 'du:ɪŋ 'sʌmθɪŋ 82
keep a promise ki:p ə 'prɒmɪs 72
keep a secret ki:p ə 'si:kret 82
keep in touch ki:p ɪn tʌtʃ 82
keep off sth ki:p ɒf 'sʌmθɪŋ 31
keep right/left ki:p raɪt/left 31
keep sb fit ki:p 'sʌmbɒdi fɪt 42
keep sth up ki:p 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 82
kettle 'ketəl 18
keyboard ˌki:bɔ:d 39, 45, 53
keyboard player ˌki:bɔ:d 'pleɪə 45
(I'm/you're, etc.) kidding ˌkɪdɪŋ 76
kids kɪdz 95
kill kɪl 58
kind kaɪnd 11
kind of kaɪnd əv 76
Kind regards kaɪnd rɪ'gʊ:dz 98
kiss n, v kɪs 72
kitten ˌkɪtən 2
knee ni: 9
knowledge (of sth) ˌnɒlɪdʒ 86
Korean kə'reɪən 5
lab læb 35, 100
laboratory ˌləbərətəri 35
ladder ˌlædə 62
lamb læm 25
land v lænd 47
landing ˌlændɪŋ 47
landing card ˌlændɪŋ kɑ:d 96
landline ˌlændlaɪn 52
landscape ˌlændskeɪp 6
lane (on a road) leɪn 30
laptop ˌlæptɒp 53
large number/amount lu:dʒ ˌnʌmbə/ə'maʊnt 74
last v lɑ:st 35, 46, 59
last long lɑ:st lɒŋ 59
late (50s/60s, etc.) leɪt 14
lately ˌleɪtli 59
latest ˌleɪtɪst 44
laugh v lɑ:f 9
law lɔ: 35
lawyer ˌlɔ:ɪ 36
lazy ˌleɪzi 11
lead [be in front] li:d 43
leader ˌli:də 56
league li:g 43
lean li:n 31
leather ˌledə 62
leave [end a relationship] li:v 15
leave (a place) li:v 33
leave a message li:v ə 'mesɪdʒ 52
leave sb/sth out li:v 'sʌmbɒdi/ 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 80
leave sth somewhere li:v 'sʌmθɪŋ 'sʌmweə 19
leaves (on a tree) li:vz 28
lecturer ˌlektʃərə 35, 36
legal ˌli:gəl 69
lemon ˌlemən 25
lend lend 32
length leŋθ 61
leopard ˌlepəd 8
let [allow] let 14
let you know let ju: nəʊ 99
lettuce ˌletɪs 25
library ˌlaɪbrəri 35
lie down laɪ daʊn 79
lift n lɪft 17
light [not dark] laɪt 17
light [not much] laɪt 7, 74
light lunch laɪt lʌntʃ 16

- lightning 'laɪtnɪŋ 7
 like [similar to] laɪk 85
 likely 'laɪkli 24
 limited number/amount/choice
 'lɪmɪtɪd 'nʌmbəʔə'maʊnt/tʃɔɪs
 74
 limited vocabulary
 'lɪmɪtɪd və'kæbjələri 74
 link (computer) lɪŋk 54
 link word lɪŋk wɜ:d 4
 lion 'laɪən 8
 lips lɪps 9
 listen [pay attention] 'lɪsən 85
 literature 'lɪtrətʃə 44
 live adj laɪv 45
 lively 'laɪvli 27, 49
 liver 'lɪvə 21
 loads of sth ləʊdz ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 39
 loan ləʊn 41
 location ləʊ'keɪʃən 17
 lock v lɒk 69
 log in/on lɒg ɪn/ɒn 53
 log off/out lɒg ɒf/aʊt 53
 look n, v lʊk 85
 look after sb lʊk 'ɑ:ftə
 'sʌmbədi 80
 look sth up lʊk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 3,
 32, 79
 loose lu:s 23
 lorry 'lɔ:ri 29
 lose (a game) lu:z 43
 lose weight lu:z weɪt 74
 loser 'lu:zə 43
 loss lɒs 41
 loud noise laʊd nɔɪz 74
 love v lʌv 67
 Love (greeting) lʌv 99
 luckily 'lʌkəli 16
 luggage 'lʌgɪdʒ 47
 lung cancer lʌŋ 'kænsə 21
 lungs lʌŋz 21
 lyrics 'lɪrɪks 45
 mad about sb məd ə'baʊt
 'sʌmbədi 77
 magnificent məg'nɪfɪsənt 49
 main course meɪn kɔ:s 48
 main road meɪn rəʊd 30
 mainly 'meɪnli 52
 majority mə'dʒɔ:rəti 60
 make [cause sb to do sth] meɪk
 24, 81
 make [force sb to do sth] meɪk
 81
 make a comparison meɪk ə
 kəm'pærɪsən 97
 make a decision meɪk ə
 dɪ'sɪʒən 81
 make a mistake meɪk ə mɪ'steɪk
 81
 make a noise meɪk ə nɔɪz 81
 make a profit/loss
 meɪk ə 'prɒfɪt/lɒs 41
 make an attempt
 meɪk ən ə'tempt 72
 make an effort meɪk ən 'efət
 81
 make friends meɪk frendz 81
 make generalisations
 meɪk ,dʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃənz 97
 make it meɪk ɪt 95
 make (money) meɪk 37
 make sth up meɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ
 ʌp 80
 make the bed meɪk ðə bed 16
 make up your mind
 meɪk ʌp jɔ: maɪnd 75, 81
 make yourself understood
 meɪk jɔ:'self ,ʌndə'stʊd 34
 make-up 'meɪkʌp 16
 male meɪl 33, 68
 manage [run a business]
 'mænɪdʒ 70
 manage [succeed in doing sth]
 'mænɪdʒ 14
 management 'mænɪdʒmənt 70
 Mandarin 'mændərɪn 5
 marital status 'mæɪrɪtəl 'steɪtəs
 96
 mark [grade] mɑ:k 34
 market 'mɑ:kɪt 49
 marry 'mæri 15
 marvellous 'mɑ:vələs 89
 match v mætʃ 23
 mate meɪt 13, 95
 material mə'tɪəriəl 62
 maths mæθs 100
 me neither mi: 'naɪðə 67
 me too mi: tu: 67
 meal mi:l 16
 mean adj mi:n 11
 mean v mi:n 32
 meaning 'mi:nɪŋ 32
 measure 'meʒə 32
 mechanic mi'kæntɪk 36
 media reporting
 'mi:diə rɪ'pɔ:tɪŋ 51
 medicine [the subject] 'medsən
 35
 medicine [to treat an illness]
 'medsən 21
 medium [meat] 'mi:diəm 48
 medium height 'mi:diəm haɪt
 10
 melon 'melən 25
 mend mend 36
 mention 'menʃən 88
 mess mes 2
 metal 'metəl 62
 mice maɪs 8
 mid (30s/40s, etc.) mɪd 14
 Middle East ,mɪdəl'i:st 5
 middle-aged ,mɪdəl'eɪdʒd 14
 mild maɪld 7
 mile maɪl 61
 million 'mɪljən 60
 mind v maɪnd 67
 mind (+ -ing) maɪnd 87
 mind the step maɪnd ðə step
 31
 mind your head maɪnd jɔ: hed
 31
 minimum wage
 'mɪnɪməm weɪdʒ 37
 minor (offence) 'maɪnə 55
 minority maɪ'nɔ:rəti 60
 minus 'maɪnəs 6
 minus adj 'maɪnəs 60
 miserable 'mɪzərəbəl 12
 mishear mɪs'hɪə 69
 miss [avoid] mɪs 82
 miss [not hear] mɪs 82
 miss sb mɪs 'sʌmbədi 82
 miss a chance/opportunity
 mɪs ə tʃɑ:ns/,'ɔ:pə'tju:nəti 82
 miss the bus/train (etc.)
 mɪs ðə bʌs/treɪn 19, 29, 74
 missing 'mɪsɪŋ 58
 misunderstand ,mɪsʌndə'stænd
 69
 mix n mɪks 27
 mix sth up mɪks 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 2
 mobile edition 'məʊbaɪl ɪ'dɪʃən
 51
 mobile number
 'məʊbaɪl 'nʌmbə 52
 monkey 'mʌŋki 8
 monthly 'mʌntθli 51
 mood mu:d 12
 mosque mɒsk 49
 mosquito mə'ski:təʊ 8
 mostly 'məʊstli 52
 mother tongue 'mʌðə tʌŋ 73
 mother/brother/son-in-law
 'mʌðə/'brʌðə/sʌn ɪn lɔ: 13
 motorbike 'məʊtəbaɪk 29
 mouse (animal) maʊs 8
 mouse (computer) maʊs 53
 mouse mat maʊs mæt 53
 move mu:v 17
 MP ,em'pi: 56, 100
 Mr 'mɪstə 100
 Mrs 'mɪsɪz 100
 multiplication ,mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən
 60
 multiplied by 'mʌltɪplaɪd baɪ
 60
 murder n, v 'mɜ:də 55
 murderer 'mɜ:dərə 55
 mushroom 'mʌʃru:m 25
 musical 'mju:zɪkəl 71
 mussels 'mʌsəlz 25
 my view/feeling is
 maɪ vju:/'fi:liŋ ɪz 66
 narrow 'nærəʊ 10, 61
 national 'næʃənəl 51, 62, 71
 navy [army] 'neɪvi 36
 navy blue 'neɪvi blu: 62
 nearest 'ni:əɪst 61
 nearly 'ni:əli 14
 necessary 'nesəsəri 2
 neck nek 9
 necklace 'nekləs 22
 negative 'negətɪv 11
 neither do/am/can I 'naɪðə du:/
 æm/kæn aɪ 67
 nephew 'nefju: 13
 nervous 'nɜ:vəs 11
 net net 42
 never mind 'nevə maɪnd 64
 news nju:z 86
 next time nekst taɪm 59
 nice naɪs 11
 nice to meet you
 naɪs tu: mi:t ju: 68
 niece ni:s 13
 night after night naɪt 'ɑ:ftə naɪt
 75

- nightlife 'naɪtlaɪf 27
 nil nil 43
 nine-to-five adj naɪn tuː faɪv 37
 no entry nəʊ 'entri 31
 no exit nəʊ 'eksɪt 31
 no parking nəʊ 'pɑːkɪŋ 31
 no problem nəʊ 'prɒbləm 64, 65
 no vacancies nəʊ 'veɪkəntsɪz 31
 no way/chance nəʊ weɪ/tʃɑːns 76
 nod your head nɒd jɔː hed 9
 normal 'nɔːməl 71
 north nɔːθ 6
 north-east nɔːθ 'iːst 6
 north-west nɔːθ 'west 6
 not at all nɒt æt ɔːl 64
 not (so) bad nɒt bæd 68
 not really nɒt 'riəli 76
 note [money] nəʊt 20
 nothing to declare 'nʌθɪŋ tuː dɪ'kleə 47
 notice n 'nəʊtɪs 31
 notice v 'nəʊtɪs 88
 noticeboard 'nəʊtɪsbɔːd 39
 nought nɔːt 60
 noun naʊn 4
 novel 'nɒvəl 44
 now and again naʊ ænd ə'gen 75
 now and then naʊ ænd ðen 75
 nowadays 'naʊədeɪz 59, 97
 nowhere to park 'nəʊweə tuː pɑːk 27
 nurse nɜːs 36
 nursery school 'nɜːsəri skuːl 33
 obesity ə'biːsəti 97
 object n 'ɒbdʒɪkt 62
 occasionally ə'keɪʒənəli 91
 ocean 'əʊʃən 6
 octopus 'ɒktəpəs 8
 of course ɒf kɔːs 65
 off [absent] ɒf 37, 39
 offence ə'fens 55
 offer 'ɒfə 87
 official ə'fɪʃəl 3
 oh [O] əʊ 60
 oil [fuel] ɔɪl 57
 oil [on food] ɔɪl 25
 old friend əʊld frend 13
 olives 'ɒlɪvz 25
 omit ə'mɪt 80
 on [place] ɒn 90
 on and off ɒn ænd ɒf 75
 on board ɒn bɔːd 78
 on business ɒn 'bɪznɪs 78
 on display ɒn dɪ'spleɪ 78
 on earth ɒn ɜːθ 6
 on fire ɒn 'faɪə 78
 on my/your own ɒn maɪ/jɔːr əʊn 15, 96
 on purpose ɒn 'pɜːpəs 78
 on record ɒn 'rekɔːd 57
 on strike ɒn straɪk 78
 on the first/second (etc.) floor ɒn ðə fɜːst/'sekənd flɔː 17
 on the Internet ɒn ði 'ɪntənɪt 54
 on the one hand ɒn ðə wʌn hænd 97
 on the other hand ɒn ði 'ʌðə hænd 97
 on the outskirts ɒn ði 'aʊtsaɪts 17
 on the phone ɒn ðə fəʊn 52, 78
 on the way ɒn ðə weɪ 30
 on the whole ɒn ðə həʊl 75, 97
 on time ɒn taɪm 59, 78
 once wʌns 68
 once a week/month (etc.) wʌns ə wɪk/mʌnθ 16
 once again wʌns ə'gen 99
 once or twice wʌns ɔː twaɪs 75
 one day wʌn deɪ 59
 one of the advantages of ... wʌn ɒv ði əd'vɑːntɪdʒɪz ɒv 97
 onion 'ʌnjən 25
 only child 'əʊnli tʃaɪld 13
 open space 'əʊpən speɪs 28
 opera (singer) 'ɒpərə 45
 operate on sb 'ɒpəreɪt ɒn 'sʌmbɒdi 36
 operating system 'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ 'sɪstəm 53
 operation ,ɒpə'reɪʃən 21
 opposite 'ɒpəzɪt 1
 or so ɔː səʊ 95
 orchestra 'ɔːkɪstrə 45
 ordinary 'ɔːdɪnəri 10
 organisation ,ɔːgənəɪ'zeɪʃən 39
 organise 'ɔːgənəɪz 39
 otherwise 'ʌðəwaɪz 94
 out [not there] aʊt 52
 out of aʊt ɒv 90
 out of order aʊt ɒv 'ɔːdə 19, 31
 out of the blue aʊt ɒv ðə bluː 75
 out of work aʊt ɒv wɜːk 38
 out-of-date ,aʊtəv'deɪt 78
 outside lane 'aʊtsaɪd leɪn 30
 outstanding ,aʊt'stændɪŋ 43
 oven 'ʌvən 18, 26
 over [more than] 'əʊvə 6
 over [movement] 'əʊvə 90
 overcharge ,əʊvə'tʃɑːdʒ 69
 overhead locker 'əʊvəhed 'lɒkə 47
 oversleep ,əʊvə'sliːp 64
 overtake ,əʊvə'teɪk 30
 overtime 'əʊvətəɪm 37
 overweight ,əʊvə'weɪt 10
 owe əʊ 20
 own adj əʊn 18, 38
 own v əʊn 17, 28, 38
 owner 'əʊnə 38
 pack pæk 69
 packed pækɪt 49
 packet 'pækɪt 63
 pain peɪn 21
 painful 'peɪnfəl 21, 71
 painless 'peɪnləs 71
 pair peə 63
 palace 'pælɪs 49
 paper [newspaper] 'peɪpə 51
 paperwork 'peɪpəwɜːk 39
 parade pə'reɪd 46
 parcel 'pɑːsəl 31
 parked car pɑːkt kɑː 30
 parrot 'pærət 8
 part of speech pɑːt ɒv spiːtʃ 3
 partly 'pɑːtli 66
 partner 'pɑːtnə 32
 part-time 'pɑːt'taɪm 38
 pass an exam pɑːs æn ɪg'zæm 34
 passenger 'pæsəndʒə 47
 password 'pɑːswɜːd 53
 paste peɪst 53
 patient adj 'peɪʃənt 11
 patient n 'peɪʃənt 21
 pause pɔːz 4
 pavement 'peɪvmənt 30
 pay n, v peɪ 37
 pay attention peɪ ə'tenʃən 76
 pay back peɪ bæk 41
 pay rise peɪ raɪz 38
 PC 'piːsiː 53, 100
 peace and quiet piːs ænd 'kwaɪət 75
 peaceful 'piːsfəl 71
 peach piːtʃ 25
 pear peə 25
 peas piːz 25
 pedestrian pə'destrɪən 30
 pedestrian crossing pə'destrɪən 'krɒsɪŋ 30
 peel piːl 26
 pencil sharpener 'pensəl 'ʃɑːpənə 32
 per cent pə'sent 41, 60
 percentage pə'sentɪdʒ 41
 perform pə'fɔːm 45
 performance pə'fɔːməns 45
 permanent 'pɜːmənənt 1
 permission pə'mɪʃən 65
 personal (opinion) 'pɜːsənəl 71
 personal details 'pɜːsənəl 'diːteɪlz 96
 personal statement 'pɜːsənəl 'steɪtmənt 96
 personally 'pɜːsənəli 66
 persuade pə'sweɪd 88
 pet pet 8
 phone fəʊn 100
 phone sb back fəʊn 'sʌmbɒdi bæk 52
 phonemic symbol fə'niːmɪk 'sɪmbəl 3, 4
 photo 'fəʊtəʊ 100
 photocopier 'fəʊtəʊ,kɒpiə 39
 phrasal verb 'freɪzəl vɜːb 4
 phrase freɪz 3, 4
 pianist 'piːənɪst 45
 piano pi'ænəʊ 45
 pick pɪk 28
 pick sb up [collect sb] pɪk 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp 79
 pick sth up [learn] pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 34
 pick sth up [lift sth from the floor] pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 79

- pie paɪ 26
 piece pi:ʃ 63, 86
 pill pil 21
 pillow 'pɪləʊ 18
 pilot 'paɪlət 36
 pineapple 'paɪnæpəl 25
 pink piŋk 62
 pipe paɪp 36
 pitch piʃ 42
 place [town/building] pleɪs 49
 plan plæn 36
 plane pleɪn 100
 planet 'plænit 6
 plant n plɑ:nt 28
 plant v plɑ:nt 57
 plastic 'plæstɪk 62
 platform 'plætfɔ:m 29
 play (a game) pleɪ 42
 play against sb pleɪ ə'genst
 'sʌmbədi 43
 pleasant 'plezənt 11
 Please accept our apologies
 for ... pli:z ək'sept 'əʊər
 ə'pɒlədʒɪz fɔ: 98
 Please could you ...?
 pli:z kəd ju: 98
 plenty 'plenti 49, 63
 plug plʌg 32
 plug sth in plʌg 'sʌmθɪŋ ɪn 32
 plumber 'plʌmə 36
 plus plʌs 60
 PM ,pi:'em 100
 pocket 'pɒkɪt 22
 pocket money 'pɒkɪt 'mʌni 86
 podcast 'pɒdkɑ:st 51
 poet 'pəʊt 44
 poetry 'pəʊtri 44
 point [decimal point] pɔɪnt 60
 point [idea] pɔɪnt 66
 point of view pɔɪnt əv vju: 97
 pointed 'pɔɪntɪd 62
 Poland 'pɒlənd 5
 police force pə'li:s fɔ:s 36
 police officer pə'li:s 'ɒfɪsə 36
 policy 'pɒləsi 56
 Polish 'pɒlɪʃ 5
 polite pə'laɪt 65
 politely pə'laɪtli 91
 political pə'lɪtɪkəl 56
 political party pə'lɪtɪkəl 'pɑ:ti
 56
 pollution pə'lu:ʃən 27
 pop music pɒp 'mju:zɪk 45
 popular 'pɒpjələ 46, 70
 popularity ,pɒpjə'lærəti 70
 population ,pɒpjə'leɪʃən 5
 pork pɔ:k 25
 Portuguese ,pɔ:tfə'gi:z 5
 positive 'pɒzətɪv 11
 post n [different meanings]
 pəʊst 3
 post [message] pəʊst 54
 postgraduate ,pəʊst'grædʒuət
 35
 postpone pəʊst'pəʊn 80
 pour (with rain) pɔ: 7
 powerful 'paʊəfəl 56
 prawns prɔ:nz 25
 predict (the future) pri'dɪkt 74
 prefer pri'fɜ: 67
 prefix 'pri:fɪks 4
 pregnancy 'pregnənsi 15
 pregnant 'pregnənt 15
 preparation ,prepə'reɪʃən 34
 preposition ,prepə'zɪʃən 4
 pretty [attractive] 'prɪti 10
 pretty [rather] 'prɪti 91
 pride praɪd 12
 primary school 'praɪməri sku:l
 33
 prime minister praɪm 'mɪnɪstə
 56
 print prɪnt 53
 print sth out prɪnt 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt
 53
 printer 'prɪntə 53
 prison 'prɪzən 55
 private 'praɪvət 33
 proceed prə'si:d 95
 produce v prə'dju:s 37, 39
 product 'prɒdʌkt 37
 production prə'dʌkʃən 39
 profession prə'feʃən 36
 profit 'prɒfɪt 41
 progress n 'prɒʊgres 86
 promise n, v 'prɒmɪs 72
 promise (+ obj) that
 'prɒmɪs ðæt 88
 promise to do sth 'prɒmɪs tu: du:
 'sʌmθɪŋ 87
 promote prə'məʊt 38
 promotion prə'məʊʃən 38
 pronoun 'prəʊnaʊn 4
 pronounce prə'naʊns 32
 pronunciation prə,nʌnsi'eɪʃən
 32
 properly 'prɒpəli 19
 protect prə'tekt 8, 58
 protection prə'tekʃən 50
 proud praʊd 12
 provide prə'vaɪd 56
 psychologist saɪ'kɒlədʒɪst 35
 psychology saɪ'kɒlədʒi 35
 public transport
 'pʌblɪk 'trænspɔ:t 28, 29, 73
 publish 'pʌblɪʃ 51
 punctuation ,pʌŋktʃu'eɪʃən 4
 punish 'pʌnɪʃ 33, 55
 punishment 'pʌnɪʃmənt 55
 pupil 'pju:pəl 33
 purchase 'pɜ:tʃəs 95
 purple 'pɜ:pəl 62
 purpose 'pɜ:pəs 94
 push pʊʃ 82
 put on make-up put ɒn 'meɪkʌp
 16
 put on the brakes
 put ɒn ðə breɪks 72
 put on weight put ɒn weɪt 74
 put sb through put 'sʌmbədi
 θru: 52
 put sth back put 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk
 79
 put sth off put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 80
 put sth on [make equipment
 work] put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 79
 put sth up [raise] put 'sʌmθɪŋ
 ʌp 79
 put sth on [put clothes on your
 body] put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn
 22, 79, 80
 qualification ,kwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃən
 35, 96
 qualified 'kwɒlɪfaɪd 35
 qualify 'kwɒlɪfaɪ 35
 quality 'kwɒləti 40
 quantity 'kwɒntəti 63
 quarter [one quarter] 'kwɔ:tə 60
 quarter [three months] 'kwɔ:tə
 41
 question mark 'kwɛstʃən mɑ:k
 4
 queue n kju: 24, 29, 72
 queue v kju: 31, 72
 quiet 'kwaɪət 27
 quietly 'kwaɪətli 91
 quit kwɪt 38
 quite kwɑ:t 91
 quite a bit kwɑ:t ə bɪt 95
 quite a long way kwɑ:t ə lɒŋ weɪ
 61
 quite likely kwɑ:t 'laɪkli 74
 quite often kwɑ:t 'ɒfən 91
 rabbit 'ræbɪt 8
 race n reɪs 43
 race v reɪs 42
 racing driver 'reɪsɪŋ 'draɪvə 42
 rain n, v reɪn 7
 rainforest 'reɪn,fɒrɪst 6
 raise reɪz 41
 range reɪndʒ 24
 rare [meat] reə 48
 rare [unusual] reə 8
 rarely 'reəli 91
 rather 'rɑ:ðə 91
 raw rɔ: 2, 26
 real riəl 62
 realise 'riələɪz 88
 reality TV show
 ri'æləti ,ti:'vi:ʃəʊ 51
 really [very] 'riəli 89
 really? [to express surprise]
 'riəli 67
 reason 'ri:zən 94
 reasonable 'ri:zənəbəl 23, 71
 recently 'ri:səntli 59
 reception [in a hotel] rɪ'sepʃən
 48
 reception [wedding party]
 rɪ'sepʃən 15
 recession rɪ'seʃən 41
 recipe 'resɪpi 26
 recommend (+ -ing) ,rekə'mend
 87
 recommend + that
 ,rekə'mend ðæt 50, 88
 record n 'rekɔ:d 43
 record v rɪ'kɔ:d 45
 recording studio
 rɪ'kɔ:dɪŋ 'stju:diəʊ 45
 red pepper red 'pepə 25
 reduce ri'dju:s 56, 57
 reduction ri'dʌkʃən 56
 reference 'refərəns 96
 refund n 'ri:fʌnd 24

- regarding rɪ'gɑ:dɪŋ 95, 98
region 'ri:dʒən 6
regional 'ri:dʒənəl 51
registration form
'redʒɪ'streɪʃən fɔ:m 96
regret n, v rɪ'gret 72, 98
regular (verb) 'regjələ 4
regularly 'regjələli 54
reject v rɪ'dʒekt 80
relating to rɪ'leɪtɪŋ tu: 3
relations rɪ'leɪʃənz 13
relationship rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp 15
relatives 'relatɪvz 13
relax rɪ'læks 70
relaxation ,rɪ:læks'eɪʃən 70
relaxed rɪ'lækst 33
relevant 'reləvənt 96
reliable rɪ'laɪəbəl 11, 29, 71
rely on rɪ'laɪ ɒn 77
remarry ,rɪ:'mæri 13
remind rɪ'maɪnd 88
remove rɪ'mu:v 19
rent n, v rent 17, 20
repair rɪ'peə 36
repeat rɪ'pi:t 32
repetition ,repi'tɪʃən 32
replace rɪ'pleɪs 24
reply n, v rɪ'plai 54, 65, 72
report rɪ'pɔ:t 51
reporter rɪ'pɔ:tə 51
represent ,reprɪ'zent 36
request n rɪ'kwest 65
require rɪ'kwaɪə 95, 96
rescue n, v 'reskjʊ: 72
research n rɪ'sɜ:tʃ 35
reserve rɪ'zɜ:v 48
resign rɪ'zaɪn 38
resignation ,rezɪg'neɪʃən 38
responsible for rɪ'spɒnsəbəl fɔ:
37
result [consequence] rɪ'zʌlt
57, 97
result [in a competition] rɪ'zʌlt
43
retake sth ,rɪ:'teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ 34
retire rɪ'taɪə 38
retired rɪ'taɪəd 14
retirement rɪ'taɪəmənt 14, 38
review rɪ'vju: 44, 51
reviewer rɪ'vju:ə 44
revise rɪ'vaɪz 1, 34
revision rɪ'vɪʒən 34
rewrite 'ri:raɪt 69
ride [a bike] raɪd 29
right [exactly] raɪt 90
right away raɪt ə'weɪ 75
ring v rɪŋ 52, 72
ring [jewellery] n rɪŋ 22
ring a bell rɪŋ ə bel 75
rink rɪŋk 42
rise n, v raɪz 41
road sign rəʊd saɪn 30
roast rəʊst 26
rob rɒb 55
robber 'rɒbə 55
robbery 'rɒbəri 55
rock rɒk 50
rock climbing rɒk 'klaɪmɪŋ 42
romantic comedy
rəʊ'mæntɪk 'kɒmədi 44
room [space] ru:m 86
room service ru:m 'sɜ:vɪs 48
roots ru:ts 28
rough (sea) rʌf 50
roughly 'rʌfli 10, 14
round [movement] raʊnd 90
round [shape] raʊnd 62
round the corner
raʊnd ðə 'kɔ:nə 29, 61
routine ru:'ti:n 1
rub sth out rʌb 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt
1, 32
rubber 'rʌbə 1, 32, 62
rubbish 'rʌbɪʃ 86
rucksack 'rʌksæk 22
rug rʌg 18
ruler 'ru:lə 32
run [manage] rʌn 37, 40
run [use applications] rʌn 53
run out of sth rʌn aʊt ɒv
'sʌmθɪŋ 19, 39
runway 'rʌnweɪ 47
rush hour rʌʃ 'aʊə 27
Russia 'rʌʃə 5
Russian 'rʌʃən 5
sack n, vsæk 38
safe seɪf 27
sail seɪl 42
sailing 'seɪlɪŋ 42
sailor 'seɪlə 36, 42
salad 'sæləd 25
salad dressing 'sæləd 'dresɪŋ 25
salary 'sæləri 37
sales rep seɪlz rep 100
salmon 'sæmən 25
same to you seɪm tu: ju: 68
sand sænd 50
sandy 'sændi 50
satisfied with 'sætɪsfɑɪd wɪð 77
sauceman 'səʊspən 26
Saudi Arabia 'səʊdi ə'reɪbiə 5
Saudi Arabian 'səʊdi ə'reɪbiən
5
save [keep] seɪv 53, 57
save [rescue] seɪv 72
save (up) seɪv 20, 79
saxophone 'sæksəfəʊn 45
saxophonist sæk'sɒfənɪst 45
say [give information in writing]
seɪ 51, 66
say + that seɪ ðæt 88
Scandinavia ,skændɪ'neɪviə 5
scared skeəd 12
scarf skɑ:f 22
scenery 'si:nəri 28, 86
science 'saɪəns 35
science fiction 'saɪəns 'fɪkʃən 44
scientist 'saɪəntɪst 70
score a goal skɔ:r ə gəʊl 74
search n, v sɜ:tʃ 54, 58
seaside resort 'si:saɪd rɪ'zɔ:t 50
season (in the year) 'si:zən 28
season ticket 'si:zən 'tɪkɪt 29
seat belt seɪt belt 47
second (time) 'sekənd 59
secondary school
'sekəndəri sku:l 33
secondly 'sekəndli 92
secret 'si:kret 56
see [find out] si: 3
see [use your eyes] si: 85
see the sights si: ðə saɪts 49
seem si:m 85
seldom 'seldəm 91
semi-circle 'semi 'sɜ:kəl 62
send my regards/love to
send maɪ rɪ'gɑ:dz lʌv tu: 99
sense of humour
sens ɒv 'hju:mə 11
sensible 'sensɪbəl 11
series 'sɪəri:z 51
serious [bad] 'sɪəriəs 21, 74
serious [important] 'sɪəriəs 15
serious [quiet] 'sɪəriəs 11
serve v sɜ:v 23
service 'sɜ:vɪs 48
set off set ɒf 80
set sth up set 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 37, 40
several 'sevərəl 63
shade feɪd 50
shake hands feɪk hændz 9, 68
shake your head feɪk jɔ: hed 9
shall we ...? ʃæl wi: 65
share ʃeə 18, 32
shark ʃɑ:k 8
sharp(ly) ʃɑ:p 41
sharpen 'ʃɑ:pən 32
shave feɪv 16
sheet [of a bed] ʃi:t 18
sheet [of paper] ʃi:t 63
shelf ʃelf 24
shine ʃaɪn 7
shocked ʃɒkt 89
shocking 'ʃɒkɪŋ 89
shoot ʃu:t 58
shop v ʃɒp 23
shop assistant ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt 23
shopping centre 'ʃɒpɪŋ 'sentə
24
shore ʃɔ: 50
short of sth ʃɔ:t ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 77
shoulder 'ʃəʊldə 9
shout at/to sb ʃaʊt æt tu:
'sʌmbədi 77
show sb around ʃəʊ 'sʌmbədi
ə'raʊnd 39
shower [bath] 'ʃaʊə 16
shower [of rain] 'ʃaʊə 7
shy ʃaɪ 11
sight saɪt 85
sights saɪts 49
sightseeing 'saɪtsi:ŋ 49
sign n saɪn 30
sign v saɪn 98
sign (of sth happening) saɪn 41
signature 'sɪgnətʃə 96, 98
signed saɪnd 96
significance sɪg'nɪfɪkəns 71
silence 'saɪləns 31
silently 'saɪləntli 1
silk sɪlk 62
silly 'sɪli 11
similar 'sɪmɪlə 70, 77
similarity ,sɪmɪ'lærɪti 70
simple 'sɪmpəl 34

- since [conjunction] sɪns 94, 99
 since [preposition] sɪns 59
 singer 'sɪŋə 70
 single [record] 'sɪŋɡəl 45
 single room 'sɪŋɡəl ru:m 48
 sink sɪŋk 18
 sister-in-law 'sɪstətɪnlɔ: 13
 situation ,sɪtʃu'eɪʃən 68
 size saɪz 23, 61
 ski v ski: 42
 skills skɪlz 96
 skin skɪn 9
 skirt skɜ:t 22
 skis ski:z 42
 sky skaɪ 7
 sleep n sli:p 16
 sleeping bag 'sli:pɪŋ bæɡ 86
 sleeve sli:v 22
 slice slaɪs 63
 slight slaɪt 41
 slightly 'slaɪtli 41, 91
 slip sli:p 19
 smart [well-dressed] smɑ:t 10, 22, 33
 smell n, v smel 85
 smooth smu:ð 1
 snack snæk 16
 snake sneɪk 8
 snow v snəʊ 7
 so səʊ 94
 so do/am I səʊ du:/æm aɪ 67
 so that səʊ ðæt 94
 soap opera səʊp 'ɒpərə 51
 sociable 'səʊʃəbəl 71
 social networking site 'səʊʃəl 'netwɜ:kɪŋ saɪt 54
 socket 'sɒkɪt 32
 sofa 'səʊfə 18
 software 'sɒftweə 53
 sold out səʊld aʊt 31
 soldier 'səʊldɪə 36, 58
 solo artist 'səʊləʊ 'ɑ:tɪst 45
 solution sə'lu:ʃən 57
 some people believe ... sʌm 'pi:pəl bɪ'li:v 97
 something wrong with 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wɪð 77
 songwriter 'sɒŋ,raɪtə 45
 sooner or later 'su:nə ɔ: 'leɪtə 75
 sore throat sɔ: θrəʊt 21
 sorry to disturb you 'sɒri tu: dɪ'stɜ:b ju: 64
 sorry to keep you waiting 'sɒri tu: ki:p ju: 'weɪtɪŋ 64
 sort of sɔ:t ɒv 76
 sort sth out sɔ:t 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 79
 sound saʊnd 85
 sour 'saʊə 26
 south saʊθ 6
 South Korea saʊθ kə'ri:ə 5
 south-east saʊθ 'i:st 6
 south-west saʊθ 'west 6
 souvenir 'su:vən'iə 49
 space speɪs 17
 spacebar 'speɪsbɑ: 53
 Spain speɪn 5
 spam spæm 54
 Spanish 'spænɪʃ 5
 spare room speə ru:m 18
 spare time speə taɪm 16
 sparkling 'spɑ:kəlɪŋ 48
 Speaking [on the phone] 'spi:kɪŋ 52
 special offer 'speʃəl 'ɒfə 24
 spectacular spek'tækjələ 46
 speech spi:tʃ 82
 speed limit spi:d 'lɪmɪt 30
 spell spel 32
 spelling 'spelɪŋ 32
 spend (money) on spend ɒn 77
 spend time spend taɪm 50, 74
 spicy 'spɑ:si 26
 spider 'spaɪdə 8
 spill spɪl 19
 spinach 'spɪnɪʃ 25
 spoonful 'spu:nfʊl 63
 square adj, n skweə 62
 St seɪnt/stri:t 100
 stadium 'steɪdɪəm 42
 stall stɔ:l 24
 star [famous actor] stɑ: 44
 starter 'stɑ:tə 48
 state education steɪt ,edʒu'keɪʃən 33
 station [broadcasting] 'steɪʃən 51
 statue 'stætʃu: 49
 stay n steɪ 48
 stay at school steɪ æt sku:l 33
 stay behind steɪ bɪ'haɪnd 33
 stay in steɪ ɪn 16
 stay out late steɪ aʊt leɪt 14
 stay the same steɪ ðə seɪm 41
 steal sti:l 55
 stepfather 'step,fɑ:ðə 13
 steps steɪps 17
 sterling 'stɜ:ɪŋ 20
 stick stɪk 42
 still [continuing] stɪl 93
 still [of water] stɪl 48
 stir stɜ: 26
 stomach ache 'stʌmək eɪk 21
 store stɔ: 53
 storm stɔ:m 7
 straight streɪt 10
 straight away streɪt ə'weɪ 75
 stranger 'streɪndʒə 68
 strawberry 'strɔ:bəri 25
 street market stri:t 'mɑ:kɪt 24
 stress [emphasis] stres 4
 stress [worry] stres 12
 stressed strest 27
 stressful 'stresfʊl 27
 strict strikt 14, 33
 stripe straɪp 62
 stroll strɔ:l 50
 strong (wind) strɒŋ 7
 study n 'stʌdi 18
 stuff stʌf 95
 stupid 'stju:pɪd 11, 70
 stupidity stju:'pɪdəti 70
 stylish 'stɑɪlɪʃ 22, 62
 subject 'sʌbdʒɪkt 33
 subtraction səb'trækʃən 60
 succeed (in doing sth) sək'si:d 35, 38
 success sək'ses 38
 successful sək'sesfəl 35, 38
 suddenly 'sʌdnli 91
 suffer 'sʌfə 57
 suffer from sth 'sʌfə frɒm 'sʌmθɪŋ 21
 suffix 'sʌfɪks 4
 suggest (+ -ing) sə'dʒest x 87
 suggest + that sə'dʒest ðæt 88
 suggestion sə'dʒestʃən 65
 suit n su:t 22
 suit v su:t 22, 23
 suitable 'su:təbəl 71
 suitcase 'su:tkeɪs 47
 sun sʌn 7
 sunbathe 'sʌnbeɪð 50
 sunbathing 'sʌnbeɪðɪŋ 50
 sunburn 'sʌnbɜ:n 50
 sun cream sʌn kri:m 50
 sunglasses 'sʌn,glɑ:sɪz 73
 sunny 'sʌni 7
 sunscreen/sunblock 'sʌnskri:n/'sʌnblɒk 50
 sunset 'sʌnset 28
 suntan 'sʌntæn 50
 superb su:'pɜ:b 43
 support [help] sə'pɔ:t 56, 98
 sure ʃɜ: 65
 surf the web sɜ:f ðə web 54
 surface 'sɜ:fɪs 6
 surfing 'sɜ:fɪŋ 50
 surgeon 'sɜ:dʒən 21, 36
 surgery [an operation] 'sɜ:dʒəri 21
 surgery [a place] 'sɜ:dʒəri 36
 surrounded by sə'raʊndɪd baɪ 28
 swap (places) swɒp 32
 sweater 'swetə 22
 sweets swi:ts 24
 swerve swɜ:v 30
 swimmer 'swɪmə 42
 swimming costume 'swɪmɪŋ 'kɒstju:m 42
 Swiss swɪs 5
 switch sth off swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 57
 switch sth on swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 79
 Switzerland 'swɪtsələnd 5
 syllable 'sɪləbəl 4
 synonym 'sɪnɒnɪm 1
 system 'sɪstəm 33
 tablet 'tæblət 21
 take [accept sth] teɪk 81
 take [remove sth] teɪk 81
 take [steal] teɪk 55, 81
 take [write down] teɪk 81
 take (size 12) teɪk 81
 take (time) teɪk 59
 take a break teɪk ə breɪk 81
 take a course teɪk ə kɔ:s 81
 take/make a decision teɪk/meɪk ə dɪ'sɪʒən 81
 take a look teɪk ə lʊk 81

take a photo	teik ə 'fəʊtəʊ	81	that's a shame	ðæts ə ʃeɪm	23	totally	'təʊtəli	66, 91
take/have a shower	teik/hæv ə 'ʃaʊə	81	that's all right/okay	ðæts ɔ:l raɪt ə'keɪ	64	touch n, v	tʌtʃ	85
take action	teik 'æksjən	57	that's to say	ðæts tu: seɪ	100	tournament	'tʊənəmənt	43
take/do an exam	teik/du: æn ɪg'zæm	34	that's very kind of you	ðæts 'veri kaɪnd ɒv ju:	64	towards	tə'wɔ:dz	90
take care	teik keə	68	the best/worst thing about ...	ðə best/wɜ:st θɪŋ ə'baʊt	28	toy	tɔɪ	62
take/do exercise	teik/du: 'eksəsaɪz	81	the cold	ðə kəʊld	7	track [music]	træk	45
take over sth	teik 'əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ	40	the last time	ðə lɑ:st taɪm	59	track [sport]	træk	42
take part	teik pɑ:t	43	the news	ðə nju:z	51	tractor	'træktə	28
take place	teik pleɪs	46	the other day	ði 'ʌðə deɪ	59	trade	treɪd	41
take sb on	teik 'sʌmbɒdi ɒn	79	the thing is ...	ðə θɪŋ ɪz	95	tradition	trə'dɪʃən	46
take sth back	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk	79	theft	θeft	55	traditional	trə'dɪʃənəl	46, 71
take sth off	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf	22, 80	there's something wrong with ...	ðeəz 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wɪð	19	traffic jam	'træfɪk dʒæm	27
take sth up	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp	40	therefore	'ðeəfɔ: 94	trainers	'treɪnəz	22	
take things/it easy	teik θɪŋz ɪt 'i:zi	81	these days	ði:z deɪz	59	training	'treɪnɪŋ	38
takeaway	'teɪkəweɪ	16	thick [not thin]	θɪk	61	translate (sth into sth)	trænz'leɪt	2, 70, 77
take-off	'teɪkɒf	47	thick fog	θɪk fɒg	7	translation	trænz'leɪʃən	2, 70
talent	'tælənt	11	thief	θi:f	55	translator	trænz'leɪtə	70
talented	'tæləntɪd	11	thin	θɪn	61	travel agent	'trævəl 'eɪdʒənt	73
tall person/tree/building	tɔ:l 'pɜ:sən/tri:/'bɪldɪŋ	61	think of (+ -ing)	θɪŋk ɒv	77, 87	treat	tri:t	36
tap	tæp	18, 57	though	ðəʊ	93	tree	tri:	28
taste [flavour]	n, v teɪst	26, 85	thousand	'θaʊzənd	60	trend	trend	41
taste [what you like]	teɪst	45	three quarters	θri:'kwɔ:təz	60	trolley	'trɒli	24, 47
tasty	'teɪsti	26	thriller	'θrɪlə	44	truck	trʌk	29
tax	tæks	56	through	θru:	90	trumpet	'trʌmpɪt	45
taxi rank	'tæksi ræŋk	29	throw sth away	θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'weɪ	24, 57	trumpeter	'trʌmpɪtə	45
teaching	'ti:tʃɪŋ	35	throw sth to/at sb	θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ tu:/æt 'sʌmbɒdi	77	trunk	trʌŋk	8
team	ti:m	43, 96	thumb	θʌm	9	trust	trʌst	11
tear v	teə	19	thunder	'θʌndə	7	try sth on	traɪ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn	23
teenager	'ti:n,eɪdʒə	14	thunderstorm	'θʌndəstɔ:m	7	try/do your best	traɪ/du: ʒɔ: best	34
teens	ti:nz	14	tick	tɪk	3	T-shirt	'ti:ʃɜ:t	22, 73
tell + obj + that	tel ðæt	88	tie	taɪ	22	tube	tju:b	63
tell sb a joke	tel 'sʌmbɒdi ə dʒəʊk	74	tiger	'taɪgə	8	tune	tju:n	45
telly	'teli	100	tights	taɪts	22	Turkey	'tɜ:ki	5
temperature	'tempərətʃə	6, 21	tights	taɪts	22	Turkish	'tɜ:kiʃ	5
temple	'tempəl	49	tiles	taɪlz	18	turn sth down [reduce volume]	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ daʊn	32
tent	tent	42, 86	time (for us) to go/leave (etc.)	taɪm tu: ɡəʊ/li:v	59	turn sth/sb down [reject]	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi daʊn	80
term	tɜ:m	33	times	taɪmz	60	turn sth off	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf	80
terminal (building)	'tɜ:mɪnəl	47	timetable	'taɪm,teɪbəl	33	turn sth on	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn	80
terribly sorry	'terəbli 'sɔ:ri	64, 74	tin (of fruit, etc.)	tɪn	63	turn sth up	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp	32
terrific	tə'rifɪk	89, 95	tiny	'taɪni	61, 89	turning	'tɜ:nɪŋ	30
terrifying	tə'reɪfɪŋ	89	tip [advice]	tɪp	2, 96	twice	twɑɪs	68
text v	tekst	52	tip [money]	tɪp	2	twin(s)	twɪn	13
texting	'tekstɪŋ	52	tired	'taɪəd	89	twin room	twɪn ru:m	48
Thai	taɪ	5	tired of sth	taɪəd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ	77	type v	taɪp	39, 96
Thailand	'taɪlənd	5	tiring	'taɪrɪŋ	89	ugly	'ʌgli	10
thank goodness/God	θæŋk 'ɡʊdnəs/ɡɒd	68	tissue	'tɪʃu:	62	UK	ˌju:'keɪ	5
thank sb (for sth)	θæŋk 'sʌmbɒdi	98	to be honest	tu: bi: 'ɒnɪst	75	UN	ˌju:'en	100
thanks (very much)	θæŋks	64	to begin with	tu: bɪ'ɪŋ wɪð	92	unable	ʌn'eɪbəl	69
that/it depends	ðæt/ɪt dɪ'pendz	76	to some extent	tu: sʌm ɪk'stent	66	unbelievable	ˌʌnbɪ'li:vəbəl	71
that sort/kind of thing	ðæt sɔ:t/kaɪnd ɒv θɪŋ	76	toast	təʊst	86	uncle	'ʌŋkəl	13
that's a great idea	ðæts ə ɡreɪt aɪ'dɪə	65	toddler	'tɒdlə	14	uncomfortable	ʌn'kʌmfətəbəl	69, 71
that's a pity	ðæts ə 'pɪti	23	toe	təʊ	9	uncountable (noun)	ʌn'kaʊntəbəl	4
			tomato	tə'mɑ:təʊ	25	under [movement]	'ʌndə	90
			too	tu:	93	under arrest	'ʌndə ə'rest	55
			toothbrush	'tu:θbrʌʃ	73	under one roof	'ʌndə wʌn ru:f	24
			toothpaste	'tu:θpeɪst	73	undergraduate	ˌʌndə'ɡrædʒuət	35
			top floor	tɒp flɔ:	17	underneath	ˌʌndə'ni:θ	90
			topic	'tɒpɪk	2	undo	ʌn'du:	22

unemployed ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd 38
 unemployment ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt 38
 unfair ʌn'feɪ 69
 unfashionable ʌn'fæʃənəbəl 71
 unforgettable ˌʌnfə'getəbəl 71
 unfriendly ʌn'frendli 11
 uniform 'ju:nɒfɔ:m 33
 United States of America
 ju:'naɪtɪd steɪts ɒv ə'merɪkə 5
 unkind ʌn'kaɪnd 11
 unless ʌn'les 94
 unlikely ʌn'laɪkli 69
 unlock ʌn'lɒk 69
 unlucky ʌn'lʌki 69
 unnecessary ʌn'nesəsəri 2
 unpack ʌn'pæk 69
 unpleasant ʌn'plezənt 11
 unreasonable ʌn'ri:zənəbəl 71
 unreliable ˌʌnrɪ'laɪəbəl 11, 71
 unsociable ʌn'səʊʃəbəl 71
 unsuccessful ˌʌnsək'sesfəl 35
 unsuitable ʌn'su:təbəl 71
 untidy ʌn'taɪdi 2
 until ʌn'tɪl 59
 up [further along] ʌp 61
 up [not in bed] ʌp 28
 up and down ʌp ənd daʊn 75
 up to ʌp tu: 46
 upload ʌp'ləʊd 54
 upset adj ʌp'set 12
 upstairs ʌp'steəz 17
 up-to-date ˌʌptə'deɪt 78
 urgently 'ɜ:dʒəntli 91
 use n ju:s 32
 use v ju:z 32
 used to ju:st tu: 67
 useful 'ju:sfəl 71
 useless 'ju:sləs 71
 username 'ju:zəneɪm 53
 utility room ju:'tɪləti ru:m 18
 valley 'væli 28
 value 'vælju: 41
 value for money
 vælju: fɔ: 'mʌni 20, 27
 van væn 29
 variety və'reɪəti 27, 40
 vase vɑ:z 63
 vast majority vɑ:st mə'dʒɔrəti 60
 veal vi:l 25
 vegetarian ˌvedʒɪ'teəriən 25
 vehicle 'vi:əkəl 29
 verb vɜ:b 4
 vet vet 36, 100
 via 'vi:ə 30
 victory 'vɪktəri 43
 video clip 'vɪdɪəʊ klɪp 54
 view vju: 17
 village 'vɪlɪdʒ 28
 vinegar 'vɪnɪgə 25
 violence 'vaɪələns 58
 violent 'vaɪələnt 58
 violin 'vaɪə'li:n 45
 violinist ˌvaɪə'lɪnɪst 45
 virus [computer] 'vaɪrəs 53

visa application form
 'vi:zə ˌæplɪ'keɪʃən fɔ:m 96
 vitally important 'vaɪtəli
 ɪm'pɔ:tənt 74
 vocational training vəʊ'keɪʃənəl
 'treɪnɪŋ 33
 volleyball 'vɒləbɔ:l 50
 vote vɔ:t 56
 vowel 'vaʊəl 34
 wage weɪdʒ 37
 waist weɪst 9
 wait and see weɪt ənd si: 76
 wake (up) weɪk 79
 wake (sb) up weɪk ʌp 16
 war wɔ: 58
 wardrobe 'wɔ:drəʊb 23
 warn (+ obj + inf) wɔ:n 88
 warning 'wɔ:nɪŋ 31
 wash n, v wɒʃ 16, 72
 washbasin 'wɒʃ,beɪsɪn 18
 washing [dirty clothes] 'wɒʃɪŋ
 16
 waste weɪst 20, 57
 watch wɒtʃ 85
 waterfall 'wɔ:təfɔ:l 6
 wave to somebody
 weɪv tu: 'sʌmbədi 9
 waves (in the sea) weɪvz 50
 wavy 'weɪvi 10
 way [route] weɪ 30
 we could ... wi: kəd 65
 weak wi:k 70
 weakness 'wi:knəs 70
 wear weə 33
 weather forecast
 'wedə 'fɔ:kəʊst 51
 webcam 'webkæm 53
 website 'websaɪt 54
 wedding 'wedɪŋ 15
 weekly 'wi:kli 1, 51
 weigh wei 10, 47
 weight weɪt 10
 well aware wel ə'weə 74
 well done [meat] wel dʌn 48
 well known wel nəʊn 51
 west west 6
 wet wet 7
 whale weɪl 8
 What are you up to? wɒt ɑ: ju:
 ʌp tu: 95
 What do you do?
 wɒt du: ju: du: 37
 What do you do for a living?
 wɒt du: ju: du: fɔ:r ə 'lɪvɪŋ 37
 What do you think of/about ...?
 wɒt du: ju: θɪŋk ɒv/ə'baʊt 66
 What does he/she look like?
 wɒt dɔz hi:/ʃi: lʊk laɪk 10
 What does that involve? wɒt dɔz
 ðæt ɪn'vɒlv 37
 What does X mean?
 wɒt dɔz eks mi:n 32
 What does X stand for? wɒt dɔz
 eks stænd fɔ: 100
 What for? wɒt fɔ: 76
 what if wɒt ɪf 76
 What's he/she/it like? wɒts hi:/ʃi:/
 ɪt laɪk 11

what's more wɒts mɔ: 93
 What's on? wɒts ɒn 44
 What's your job? wɒts jɔ: dʒɒb
 37
 wheelchair 'wi:l'tʃeə 73
 whereas weə'ræz 93
 whether 'wedə 94
 while [comparing] 'waɪl 93
 while [during] 'waɪl 92
 Who's calling? hu:z 'kɔ:lɪŋ 52
 Why don't we ...? waɪ dəʊnt wi:
 65
 Why not? waɪ nɒt 76
 wide [not narrow] waɪd 61
 wide awake waɪd ə'weɪk 74
 wide choice waɪd tʃɔ:s 74
 wide vocabulary
 waɪd vɔ:kə'bʌləri 34, 74
 widow 'wɪdəʊ 13
 width wɪθ 61
 wild (animals) waɪld 8
 willing 'wɪlɪŋ 34
 win wɪn 43
 wind n wɪnd 7
 windsurfing 'wɪndzɜ:fɪŋ 50
 windy 'wɪndi 7
 wing wɪŋ 8
 winner 'wɪnə 43
 wish wɪʃ 11
 won't be long wəʊnt bi: lɒŋ 64
 wonderful 'wʌndəfəl 89
 wood wʊd 36
 wooden 'wʊdən 18, 62
 woods wʊdz 28
 work [function] wɜ:k 19, 39
 work experience
 wɜ:k ɪk'spɪəriəns 96
 work on sth wɜ:k ɒn 'sʌmθɪŋ
 34
 work out wɜ:k aʊt 42
 work sth out wɜ:k 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt
 60
 worry about sth 'wʌri ə'baʊt
 'sʌmθɪŋ 77
 worth [value] wɜ:θ 55
 worth (+ noun/-ing) wɜ:θ 49
 would rather wʊd 'rʌ:ðə 67
 wow wəʊ 32
 wrist rɪst 9
 write down raɪt daʊn 2
 wrong number rɒŋ 'nʌmbə 52
 yard jɑ:d 61
 yawn jɔ:n 9
 yet jet 93
 yoga 'jɔ:ɡə 42
 you (don't) get ... ju: get 27, 28
 you know ju: nəʊ 76
 you must be joking ju: mʌst bi:
 'dʒɔ:kɪŋ 76
 Yours faithfully/sincerely
 jɔ:z 'feɪθfəli/ʃɪn'sɪəli 98
 zero 'ziərəʊ 60
 zip zɪp 22
 zoo zu: 8

How to use the *English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate* CD-ROM to learn vocabulary

Your copy of *English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate* comes with a CD-ROM. You can use the CD-ROM to improve your English vocabulary. These two pages answer some common questions about the CD-ROM.

What is on the CD-ROM?

The CD-ROM contains

- two practice activities for each unit of the book (200 in total)
- two vocabulary games, *Dune Buggy* and *Word Rowing*
- a test maker
- a record and play-back function
- a dictionary function
- a reference section.

When should I use the CD-ROM?

You can use the CD-ROM before or after you do a unit in the book. This section will give you some suggestions.

Using the CD-ROM before you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you discover how much vocabulary you already know about a topic. Try this:

- Choose a topic from the *Exercises* menu, for example *Shopping in the Daily Life* section.
- Complete the two exercises. After each exercise, click *Check your answers* to see how many questions you got right. Make a note of any words you found difficult.
- Now go to the relevant unit of the book. Study the notes on the left-hand page. Try to find the words you didn't know from the CD-ROM. Complete the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM. Look at the *My progress* section. Can you improve your score this time? Complete the two exercises again for the same unit.

Using the CD-ROM after you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you to remember words you learnt from the book. This kind of revision is very important if you want to remember vocabulary. Try this:

- When you complete a unit from the book, write the date at the top of the page.
- One week later, go to the CD-ROM and do the two exercises from that unit. How much vocabulary can you remember? Make a note of any words you found difficult or couldn't remember.
- Go back to the unit in the book and look for the words you didn't know. Study the words again.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM and complete the two exercises again. Did you remember those difficult words?

The CD-ROM can also help you test yourself. You can even personalise the tests to cover the topics that *you* want to practise. Try this:

- When you finish a group of units in the book (for example, the seven units in the *People* section), go to the CD-ROM and make a test on the vocabulary from those units. The CD-ROM will create five test questions from each of those units. For an extra challenge, use the time limit function. If your score is low, look at the units again. Then create a new test and try to improve your score.
- Alternatively, create a test when you have completed the whole book. Choose units at random or concentrate on units that you found difficult.

Can the CD-ROM help me with my pronunciation?

Yes, it can. The CD-ROM has a record and play-back function which you can use to practise your pronunciation. Try this:

- When you have completed an exercise on the CD-ROM, click the green arrow to hear a model pronunciation of the words or sentences.
- Then click the red *Record your voice* button at the bottom of the screen. Practise saying the word or sentence.
- Now click the green *Play your voice* arrow at the bottom of the screen. Does your pronunciation sound correct? Listen to the model pronunciation again to check.
- Record your voice again if necessary.

Can I use the CD-ROM for fun?

Yes, of course! We hope you will find all of the exercises fun. However, there are also two games which can help you to practise vocabulary in a fun way.

- In *Dune Buggy*, you drive a car and score points by hitting the correct words. You can choose from ten topics, including food and clothes, but you have to avoid the wrong words in each topic. If you write down your score after each game, you can try to improve it next time.
- In *Word Rowing*, you have to guess words from the clue that you are given. This game can help you to remember what words mean. Write down your score and try to improve it next time.

Both these games are quick and fun. Just playing for five or ten minutes a day can help you to remember more vocabulary. And to make things even more fun, you can have a competition with a friend. Who can score the most points?

What's in the reference section?

Here you will find a really useful wordlist, with all the key words from the book. You can hear the American English and British English pronunciation of every word and phrase. You can also make notes on this page. All the left-hand book pages are available to help you with the exercises.

What else can the CD-ROM do?

The CD-ROM also has a dictionary function. You can use it to look up any words that you don't know. You will need an internet connection for this. Also, you can click on any word in the CD-ROM and it will look up the word in the online dictionary.

You can also check your progress at any time using the *Progress* section. This will help you to see which exercises you have completed. It can also show you areas where you need more practice. In those cases, study the left-hand pages again.

Remember you can print out tests, exercises and the answers.

We hope you enjoy using the *English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate* CD-ROM.

English Vocabulary in Use

Pre-intermediate

Third edition

Do you want to improve your vocabulary quickly? *English Vocabulary in Use* has it all. For English language learners at B1 level, this third edition of the best-selling vocabulary book now offers:

- Fully updated units informed by the English Vocabulary Profile, so you learn the most important words at intermediate level
- New words presented and explained in context
- Lots of opportunities for personalised practice
- A common mistakes feature which helps you avoid frequent errors

www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse

B1 English Profile
www.englishprofile.org

A1 Starter

A2 Elementary

B1 Pre-intermediate and intermediate

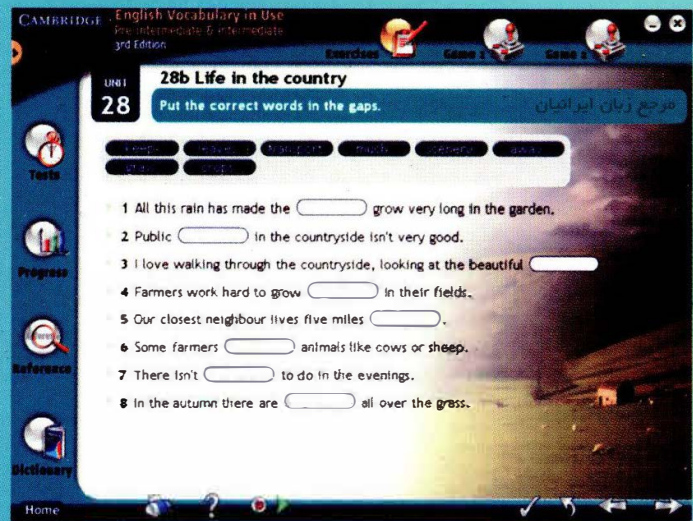
B2 Upper-intermediate

C1 Advanced

مرجع زبان ایرانین
www.irLanguage.com

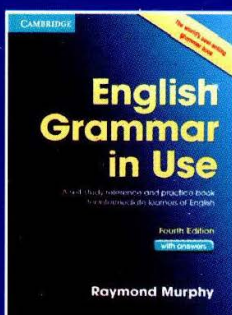
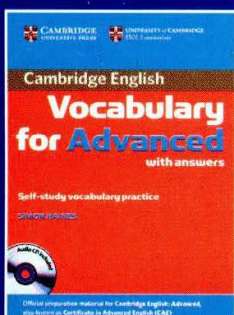
On the CD-ROM:

- Two extra exercises for each unit
- Personalised, printable tests – ideal for exam practice
- Audio recordings for every exercise
- Interactive games for fun vocabulary learning



System requirements

For Windows XP, Vista, Windows 7 and Mac OS X 10.4 or higher



CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH CORPUS

The Cambridge English Corpus is a multi-billion word collection of written and spoken English. It includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique bank of exam candidate papers.



Our authors study the Corpus to see how English is really used, and to identify typical learner mistakes. This means that Cambridge materials help students to avoid mistakes, and you can be confident the language taught is useful, natural and fully up to date.

www.cambridge.org/corpus

CAMBRIDGE QUALITY GUARANTEE



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org